



5-2

93-8

86-72°25043

11233

A NEW  
ITALIAN  
GRAMMAR,

*Which contains a True and Easy METHOD  
for acquiring this LANGUAGE.*

With many useful REMARKS, which are not to  
be found in any other GRAMMAR of this Kind.

By FERD. ALTIERI,

AUTHOR of the *Italian and English* DICTIONARY,  
and PROFESSOR of the *Italian* TONGUE  
in LONDON.

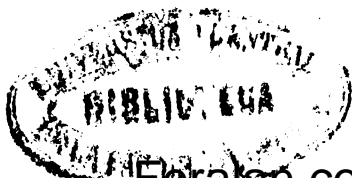


VENICE.

Printed by JOHN BAPTIST PASQUALI.

MDCCXXXVI.

WITH PERMISSION & PRIVILEGE.





FCC  
(11-23)



# TO THE READER.

THE good Success my Dictionary has met with in the World, encouraged me to compose a Grammar, that might supply the Deficiency of those that have been printed before. Besides, the pressing Instances of my Friends have so far prevailed with me, as to make me undertake that laborious, though useful Work, but not without some Fear; knowing too well how apt the World is to Criticize upon Things of this Nature. However, as I have omitted nothing, that might contribute to render this my Grammar useful to Learners, I would desire the kind Reader to peruse it first, and then speak in praise or dispraise of it, according to its Deserts. *Toriano* has given us a Grammar, which falls very short of being so compleat as it ought to be; since the Syntax, which is the principal Part of a Grammar, is not extensive enough in explaining the Use of Particles; nor the Reference the Tenses of *Italian* Verbs have with the *English*; which makes one of the greatest Difficulties of the *Italian*

Language; but he contented himself with laying down a few Rules , very useful indeed , but not sufficient to learn the *Italian* without the Assistance of a good Master. By what I have said against *Toriano's* Grammar, I don't mean to depreciate his Capacity; for I don't question but he might have given us a better if he had pleased; but only to shew , that I would have never attempted to compose a new one , had I not thought it useful, and necessary, and yet without incroaching upon another Man's Labour. As for *Veneroni's* , I have nothing to object , but this; that as he composed his Grammar for the *French*, by consequence, the Rules are adapted only to the *French* Idiom; whereas had he composed one for the *English*, he would have laid down other Rules conformable to the *English* Idiom. Now, can any one think that such a Grammar, though perfect in it self, could ever be of any service to an *Englishman*, who is to learn *Italian* , not by the *French* , but by the *English*? Don't we know the wide Difference between the *French* and *English* Languages , in regard to their Idioms? And yet the Translator, (for he is nothing else,) has so long imposed upon the Publick, by giving out a Grammar, which the Author never designed for the *English*. You will see in this my Grammar the Use of the *Italian* Particles so clearly explained, that without the least Trouble, you will

will understand how to use them, though they seem to cause the greatest Difficulty of the *Italian* Tongue. The Use of Tenses is also explained in a particular, easy, (and I may say) new Manner, with other Remarks upon that Subject, useful to be learned. And since the *English* Tongue is now so much recommended and desired abroad, especially in the Sea-port Towns in *Italy*, I have thought fit to add an *English* Grammar to the *Italian*; and for that I have chosen the best *English* Grammars, concerning the Pronunciation of Letters, explaining their different Sounds, by others adapted to the *Italian* Pronunciation; omitting nothing that might be useful and advantageous: Assuring the kind Reader, that the whole has been performed with Zeal for his Improvement, and with no other View, but to serve the *English* Nation in general.



THE

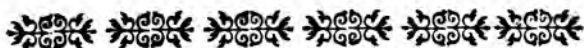
# T H E C O N T E N T S.

CHAP. I.	O F the Pronunciation	page. 1
SECT. I.	O f simple Sounds, and Letters in general	2
SECT. II.	O f the Division of Letters	2
SECT. III.	O f the Combination of Sounds and Letters	3
SECT. IV.	O f the Pronunciation of Letters	4
SECT. V.	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; font-size: 3em; line-height: 1;">}</div> O f the Incompatibility of Letters O f the Accent O f the Apostrophe, or Elision	20
SECT. VI.	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; font-size: 3em; line-height: 1;">}</div> O f the Syllables that ought to be pronounced short or long in the Nouns O f the Syllables that ought to be pronounced short or long in Verbs	28
SECT. VII.	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; font-size: 3em; line-height: 1;">}</div> O f Points or Stops O f Analogy	32 34 35
CHAP. II.	O f the Article	36
CHAP. III.	O f the Noun	39
SECT. I.	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; font-size: 3em; line-height: 1;">}</div> O f the Gender O f the Augmentatives O f the Diminutives O f the Adjectives	40 47 49 50
SECT. II.	O f the Number	50
SECT. III.	O f the Case or Declension	52
	SECT.	

SECT. IV. Of the Comparison of Adjectives	60
SECT. V. Of the Figure and Species of Nouns	61
CHAP. IV. Of the Pronouns	63
SECT. I. Of the Pronouns Personal	65
SECT. II. Of the Pronouns Possessive	73
SECT. III. Of the Pronouns Demonstrative	79
SECT. IV. Of the Pronouns Relative	84
SECT. V. Of the Pronouns Interrogative	86
SECT. VI. Of the Pronouns Numeral	87
SECT. VII. Of the Pronouns Indefinite	87
CHAP. V. Of Verbs	94
SECT. I. Of the Gender	95
SECT. II. Of the Moods	96
SECT. III. Of the Tenses	98
SECT. IV. Of the Persons	102
SECT. V. Of the Numbers	102
SECT. VI. Of Conjugation	102
— General Rules for the Terminat. of Verbs	103
— The Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb, <i>avere</i> , to have	111
— Verb, <i>essere</i> , to be	115
— Observations upon the Auxiliary Verbs	120
— Variations of the Auxiliary Verb, <i>avere</i> , to have; which are used only in Poetry	122
— Of the Verb <i>essere</i> , to be	123
— The three Conjugations of regular Active verbs	124
— Of the Conjugation of Passive Verbs	127
— The Conjugation of reflected and reciprocal Verbs	141
Of	

— Of Verbs Irregular	145
— Of Verbs Impersonal	211
— Conjugation of the Impersonal Verb <i>essere</i> , to be, with the Adverbs <i>ci</i> , and <i>vi</i> .	215
CHAP. VI. Of Participles	217
CHAP. VII. Of Adverbs	221
CHAP. VIII. Of Prepositions	235
CHAP. IX. Of Conjunctions	239
CHAP. X. Of Interjections	243
CHAP. XI. Of the Syntax	245
ART. I. Of the Construction of Articles	245
ART. II. Of the Construction of Nouns Sub- stantive	255
Of Adjectives	256
Of the Comparison	261
ART. III. Of the Use of Pronouns.	263
— Personal Pronouns	263
— Possessive	269
— Demonstrative	270
— Relative	271
— Interrogative	274
— Indefinite	275
CHAP. XII. Of Verbs	277
— Of the Use of Moods	277
— Of the Use of Tenses	284
— Of the Regimen of Verbs	286
CHAP. XIII. Of the Construction of Partici- ples	291
CHAP. XIV. Of the Use of Prepositions	295

A NEW



A N E W  
Italian Grammar.

---

C H A P. I.

*Of the Pronunciation.*

**I**T is almost as impossible for an Author to express the true Pronunciation of Words in writing, as it is impossible for a Painter to represent a Sound by Colours. The best Rule I would establish to pronounce the Languages well, would be to learn them from the Mouth of those who pronounce them the best.

However, to conform myself to the usual way of Grammarians, I will endeavour to give some Rules as clear as possible: For what would the Publick say, if before I teach them to speak, I did not teach them how to pronounce? The Order that I shall follow will be to examine each Letter, one after the other, by explaining the Qualities, the Nature, and the Proprieties of them; upon what Occasions they are incompatible

## A NEW ITALIAN

tible among themselves, and when the one is changed for the other. In short, I shall say, upon this Subject, what I have learned, either by frequenting with those who pronounce the best, or by reading the best Authors; which will be useful, not only for the Pronunciation, but also for the Orthography, and for to know the Beauty of our Poetry.

### S E C T. I.

*Of simple Sounds , and Letters in general .*

The *Italians* have but twenty Letters, *viz.*  
A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, L, M, N, O, P, Q,  
R, S, T, U, Z.

### S E C T. II.

*Of the Division of Letters .*

Letters are divided into Vowels and Consonants.

The Vowels are,

A, E, I, O, U.

The Consonants,

B, C, D, F, G, H, L, M, N, P, Q, R, S, T, Z.

The Vowels are thus called, because they form a Voice or perfect Sound of themselves; without the Help of another.

The rest of the Letters are called Consonants, that is, founding with another, because they can-

not

not make a Sound, or be pronounced without the help of another, either before or after; as *be, ve, em, en.*

As for *b*, it is neither Vowel nor Consonant, but only a Mark of Aspiration; as in these Words, *Ho, hanno, Hanno.*

In the *Italian* Language all the Letters are pronounced, and there is none but what is useful, except the *H*, as I have said before, that is never sounded; which makes Foreigners to have less Trouble to learn *Italian*, than the *Italians* to learn foreign Languages.

### S E C T. III.

#### *Of the Combination of Sounds and Letters.*

From some Letters singly pronounced, or joined with others, arise Syllables; one or more Syllables make Words; Words make Sentences; which last make up the whole Language or Speech.

A Syllable is the Sound of one or more Letters pronounced at one Time: As for Example, there are three Syllables in *A-mo-re*; Love; and four in *Giu-ra-men-to*, Oath.

A Word consists of one, or more Syllables; as, *con*, with; *Tempo*, Time; *Amare*, to Love.

A Sentence or Phrase is made up of several Words that make Sense together; as, *La vostra*

a 1

Gom-

*Compagnia m'è stata sempre cara*, your Company was always agreeable to me.

A Language or Speech is the Way of expressing our Thoughts, which may be done either by Word of Mouth, or in writing: Therefore, there are two chief Things required for that Purpose, *viz.* true Pronunciation, and Spelling.

## S E C T. IV.

*Of the Pronunciation of Letters.**Of the Vowel A.*

*A* in Italian sounds like *A* in English, in these Words, *All*, *tall*, *War*; as, *Amore*; Love; *cantare*, to sing; *parlare*, to speak.

*A* sometimes is pronounced with more strength; as, *Andare*, to go; and sometimes softer; as, *Amore*, love; and sometimes we draw it long, as if there were two *aa*; as, *ah crudele!* ah cruel! perhaps 'tis the Effect of the Aspiration that follows it. The Reason why they pronounce with more strength the Vowel *a* in *andare*, than in *Amore*, is, because in the first Word 'tis followed by two Consonants, that always cause a longer Sound, than in the others; which makes me to establish this general Rule, not only for the *a*, but also for the other Vowels; that they have always two Sounds, the one soft, when they are followed by a single Consonant; the other stronger when they are followed by two Consonants;

## G R A M M A R

nants; as *caro*, dear; *Carro*, a Cart; *Velo*, a Veil; *Vello*, Fleece; *vile*, vile; *Ville*, Countries; *colo*, I love with ardour; *Collo*, the Neck; *Brutto*, a Brute; *brutto*, ugly.

*A* is cut off in the Article, and the Pronoun *la*, before a Vowel, as in *l'Anima*.

*A* is sometimes an Article of the Dative Case; as, *a me*, to me, *a noi*, to us; with an Apostrophe 'tis used instead of *ai*, *a' miei Amici*, to my Friends.

Feminine Nouns ending in *a* are never abridged, except the Words, *Hora*, *leggiera*, *suora*, instead of which one may say *Hor*, *leggier*, *suor*.

### C.

The Letter *C* before the Vowels *e*, *i*, is pronounced like the English *ch*; as, *Centro*, *Cecità*, *Celebrare*, *Città*, read *Tchentro*, *Tchetchità*, *Tchelebrare*, *Tchittà*.

*C* before the Vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, and before the *h*, is pronounced like our *k*; as, *Capo*, *Cavallo*, *Conto*, *Custode*, read *Kapo*, *Kavallo*, *Konto*, *Kustode*.

If *c c* come before *h*, or before *a*, *o*, *u*, they are pronounced strong; as *Specchi*, Looking-glasses, *Vacca*, a Cow, *stracco*, weary, *occupato*, employed.

*CC* before *e* or *i*, are pronounced like *tch*; as, *eccedere*, to exceed, *uccidere*, to kill.

a 3

*Ch*

*Ch* before *e* or *i*, is pronounced like *k*; as, *abeto*, *chino*, read *keto*, *kino*.

*Note*, that *ch* may have two different Sounds, the one stronger, the other softer. Their different Sounds may be learned by the following Rules.

*Chi*, which in *English* signifies who, with its Compounds, *chiunque*, whosoever; *chi che si sia*, whosoever, is pronounced strong.

All the Words which begin by the same Syllable *chi*; as, *chirografo*, *Chirurgo*, *Chimera*, together with all the Words that have the Diphthong with *i* at the last Syllable, are pronounced soft; as, *vecchio*, old; *Occhio*, Eye; *Cocchio*, Coach.

But all the Words which don't begin by *chi*, nor have the Diphthong with *i* at the last Syllable, generally are pronounced stronger; as, *Spechi*, Grotto's, *Buchi*, Holes.

We have said before that the Words having the Diphthong with *i* at the last Syllable have a soft Sound; but you must observe, that if the same Diphthong is preceeded by *s*, it ought to be pronounced strong; as, *Maschio*, *Muschio*.

In the Syllables *cia*, *cio*, *ciu*. the *i* is sounded slightly; as, *Braccia*, *laccio*, *ciurma*, read *Bratsha*, *latcho*, *eburma*.

## E.

The Letter *e* has two different Sounds, the one open like *ay* in *dayly*, the other close like the *English* word *Mellow*. Tis in what consists the

the greatest Part of the Beauty of the *Italian* Pronunciation, which, however, can't be learned but by a long Use, notwithstanding all the Rules that can be given for it.

E preceeded by *i*, forms with it a Diphthong, and it is pronounced open, in any Syllable whatsoever; as *Piè*, *Diè*, *Cieco*, *Chiedo*, *Miele*, *Siegua*, *vieto*, *volontieri*, *bandiera*, *altiero*; also in all Nouns feminine of the same Termination; as *Guerriera*, *Lusinghiera*.

But in the Nouns masculine, although ending in *iero*, the Diphthong is pronounced with a Sound less opened; and, because the Nicety of this Pronunciation is hardly attained by Foreigners, the best Way for them is to pronounce it close; *Cavaliero*, *Barbiero*, *Nocchiero*.

From this Rule must be excepted the *Latin* Nouns that have an *i*, which in *Italian* is changed in *e*. The Vowel *e* in these Words ought to be pronounced open, as *bieco*, *piego*, *Diego*, which come from the *Latin*, *obliquus*, *plico*, *Didacus*.

The Pronouns *miei*, *colei*, *lei*, *coflei*, and all the first Persons singular of the Optative of the Verbs *amerei*, *leggerei*, *udirei*, follow the same Rule.

The Imperfects, *facea*, *dicea*, *volea*, are pronounced with the *e* close, because the *ea* is not a true Diphthong, but a syncope of the Words *faceva*, *diceva*, *voleva*, which retain the Pronunciation of their Primitives.

When the *e* is without Accent, and preceeded by a Comma, then it is a Conjunction, *io, e voi*, I, and you.

To avoid the Concurrence of two Vowels, they write *ed*, instead of *e*; *ed egli a me rispose*, and he answered to me. *E* with the Accent, is the third Person singular of the Verb *essere*, to be; *ed è ben giusto ch'io soffrisca*, *e peni*, and it is very just that I should suffer.

With the Apostrophe, it is put instead of *egli*, he; *eglino*, they; *non sapea chi e' fosse*, or *chi i' fossero*, I did not know who he was, or who they were.

They put sometimes this *e'* with an Apostrophe, as a Particle expletive, *e' mi par di vederlo*, methinks I see him.

## G.

This Letter has two Sounds; the one strong, the other soft. Before the Vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, or before a Consonant, it is pronounced as in English; as, *Gabbia*, a Cage; *Godo*, I enjoy; *Giusto*, Taste; *Grido*, a Cry.

Before the Vowels *e*, and *i*, it is pronounced like *dg*; *Genero*, Son-in-law; *Ginocchio*, the Knee, read *Dgenero*, *Dginocchio*.

The *Tuscans* to give to the *g* a stronger Pronunciation before the Vowels *e*, and *i*, as it is before *a*, *o*, *u*, put the *b* between; as, *Gbenbino*,

*bino*, the south-west wind; *Ghirlanda*, a Garland.

*Gg* before *e*, or *i*, are pronounced like *dg*; as, *leggere*, to read; *oggi*, to day.

*Gb* has two Sounds, as we have said of *cb*, that is to say, the Words which begin or end with a Diphthong with an *i* in it, have a softer Sound; as, *Ghiado*, Sword; *Ghiotto*, Glutton; *Ungbia*, Nail. In other Words the *gb* is pronounced strong; as, *Ghirlanda*, *Alberghi*, *Intrighi*.

The Letter *g* may be followed by the Letters *l*, *n*, *r*, in the same Syllable; as, *Gloria*, Glory; *Bagno*, Bath; *Grande*, Great. But it is to be observed, that the Letter *l*, preceded by a *g*, and followed by an *i*, melts into another *l*; as, *Figlio*, a Son; *Giglio*, Lilly; read *Fillio*, *Gillio*; except *Negligenza*, *Negligente*, which have the same Pronunciation as in *English*.

In the Syllables *gia*, *gio*, *giu*, the *i* is not almost founded, and you must not lay a great Stress upon the *g*; as, *Giardino*, a Garden; *Giorno*, a Day; *Giustizia*, Justice.

The Syllables *gna*, *gne*, *gni*, *gno*, *gnu*, are pronounced soft, almost like *nn*; as, *Campagna*, Country; *Castagne*, Chestnuts; *ogni*, every; *Ingegno*, Wit; *ignudo*, naked.

The Syllables *gua*, *gue*, *gui*, are pronounced like *gwa*, *gwe*, *gwi*; as, *guastare*, to spoil; *Guerra*, War; *Guida*, a Guide.

H. AL-

## H.

Although *h* is not properly a Letter, but only a Mark of Aspiration, yet in our Language it is very useful; nay, in some Places very necessary, for to give a greater Force to the Letters, to avoid the Equivocation in some Words, and to give them a Sense, which otherwise they would not have. In the first Case are *cheto*, still; *chino*, bent; and several others.

As for the Equivoques, *hanno*, third Person plural of the Present of the Indicative Mood of the Verb *avere*, to have, signifies, they have; and *Anno* signifies a Year; *Ghiaccio*, Ice; *giaccio*, I lie down; *ho*, I have; *o*, or; *amo*, I love; *Hamo*, a fishing-hook; *veggio*, I am awake; *veggiò*, I see.

*Io amai sempre, ed amo forte ancora.*

*In tale stella presi l'arco, e l'homo.*

*Rompete il Ghiaccio, che pietà contende.*

*E volò sopra il Cielo, e giaccio in terra.*

In fine, the Words *occhio*, *vecchio*, and many others require the *h* to make Sense; for if one did pronounce *occio*, *veccio*, these words would have no Signification.

Before *a*, *o*, *u*, the *h* has no Sound; and therefore is omitted.

## I. The

## I.

The Vowel *i* is pronounced in *English* like *ee*; as, *Libro*, a Book, read *Leebro*.

*Note*, That when *i* is between the Consonants *c*, *g*, *gl*, *sc*, and the Vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, it serves only to render the Pronunciation softer, and it is not expressed; as, *ciascheduno*, *giamai*, *gli*, *scioperato*, read *schascheduno*, *jamai*, *lli*, *shoperato*.

*I*, followed by another Vowel, for the most Part forms a Diphthong, therefore, to pronounce well these Vowels, you must make of them but one Syllable; as, *Piaga*, *Fiele*, *Fiore*. Sometimes the *i* is separated from the Vowel, but very seldom; as *chiunque*, whosoever, read *chi-unque*.

To avoid the Harshness in the Pronunciation, we add the *i* to the Words that begin with an *s*, followed by another Consonant, provided the Word that preceeds ends with a Consonant; as, *per ischerzo*, *per isdegno*, instead of *per scherzo*, *per sdegno*.

The *i* is often a Consonant, when it is followed by a Vowel, and is pronounced like *y* in the Word *you*; as, *Abbajare*, to bark; *Ajuto*, Help.

The Vowel *i* by itself is the Masculine Article of the plural Number; *I Libri*, the Books.

*I,*

*I*, with an Apostrophe stands for *Io* ; which is however peculiar to Poetry.

## L.

The Letter *L* is pronounced the same as in *English* ; *Legame*, *lontano*, *Lume*.

## M. N.

These two Letters are pronounced as in *English* : But it is to be observed, that the Syllables *im*, *in*, at the Beginning of a Word, followed by a Consonant, must be pronounced so, that no Space of Time may be left between the Consonants *m*, and *n*, and the following ; for Example, in the Words *imbolare*, *impedire*, *incrudelire*, *indegno*, the first Syllables ought to be pronounced so quick, that the Sound of *im*, *in*, may not be expressed separately from the following Consonant, as the most Part of Foreigners do ; who, in pronouncing the Word *impero*, *indegno*, sound the Syllables *im*, *in*, as if they were followed by an *e*. The best Way to attain to the Nicety of this Pronunciation, is to learn it from the Mouth of a Master, who understands well the Language.

O The

O.

The natural Sound of this Vowel commonly is close, as that of the *e*; but there is a great many exceptions.

1. In all the Monosyllables, the *o* is pronounced open; ex. *bo*, *pro*, *no*, *ciò*, with its Compounds, *accidè* *perciò*.

2. In all the first Persons singular of the Futures of the Indicative Mood; as *amerò*, *leggerò*, *udirò*; but to give a more general Rule: Note, that the *ò* with an Accent at the End of a Word is always pronounced open.

3. In the Penultima, or last Syllable but one of the Words *Coro*, *sonoro*, *canoro*, *soda*, *fora*; and in several proper Names in *oro*, and *ora*; as *Polidoro*, *Flora*, *Leonora*.

4. In the Words derived from the *Latin*; as *dotto*, from *doctus*; *porto*, from *portus*. But the *o*, which is formed from a *Latin u*, is pronounced close; as *Giovane*, from *Juvenis*; *Giogo*, from *Jugum*; *Giovare*, from *Juvare*.

This Letter may serve to form two Diphthongs, *io*, and *uo*; in both of which the *o* is pronounced open; as *Chioma*, *chiodo*, *Gioja*, *usignuolo*, *Cuore*, *Emulo*, *Stuolo*, &c. except *Fiore*, in which, notwithstanding the Diphthong *io*, is pronounced close.

The *o* derived from the *Latin* Diphthong *au*, is pro-

is pronounced open; as in the Words *Oro*, *Godo*, *Alloro*, *Toro*, which have been formed from the Latin Words *Aurum*, *Gaudeo*, *Laurus*, *Taurus*.

When the *i* is put between two Vowels, the First of which is *o*, this *o* is pronounced open; as *Troja*, *Gioja*; except *Avoltojo*, a Vultur, *Ingojare*, to Swallow; *Rasojo*, a Razor; *Asciugatojo*, a Towel.

The Position, or Anteposition causes the *o* to be pronounced open, as we have said of the *e*; as *Botta*, *Colgo*, *Donna*, *Airoce*, *Prole*, &c. *Sprone*, Spur; *Croce*, Cross, are excepted, and the *o* is pronounced close.

In the Words derived from the Latin, whereof an *u* has been changed into *o*, this *o* is always pronounced close, notwithstanding the Position; as *Colomba*, *Torre*, *Orso*, from *Columba*, *Turris*, *Ursus*.

If the Position is formed by the Letter *n*, either double or single, although the Words are not derived from the Latin, the *o* is pronounced also close; as *biondo*, *gonna*, *sonno*, *tronco*; Likewise if the Letter *n* is preceded by a *g*; as *Sogno*, Dream; *Bisogno*, Need; *Vergogna*, Shame.

Except *Bologna*, *Catalogna*, *Donna*, *Ponno*, where the *o* is pronounced open.

The *o* is also pronounced open in all the Words, whereof the Antepenultima, or the last Syllable but two is long; as *Fomite*, *opera*, *risolvere*; except *Ordine*, in which the *o* is pronounced close.

Note,

## G R A M M A R. 13

*Note*, that if the *e* derives from the *a* *Latin*, it ought to be pronounced always close; as, *Folgere*, *Polvere*, *Porpora*, from *Fulgur*, *Paluis*, *Purpura*.

In the third Persons plural of the Present, and of the Perfect Tense of the Indicative Mood, the *e* is also pronounced close? as *pongono*, they put; *corrono*, they run; *posero*, they did put; *corsero*, they did run; with their Infinitives. In all other Words comprehended in none of the Rules which I have given; the *e* is always pronounced close. However, I say, that those who are not very much advanced in the *Italian* Tongue; or those who do not aim at the perfect Knowledge of the Language; may dispense themselves to read the Rules given about the double Sound of the *e*, and of the *o*; because they are so little sensible, that many *Italians* do not distinguish them.

### P.

This Letter is pronounced the same as in *English*; and it is suppressed in some Words derived from the *Latin*, Where 'tis followed by an *s*; as in *Salmo*, *Salmodia*, *Salterio*; instead of *Psalmo*, *Psalmodia*, *Psalterio*.

### Q.

This Letter is mute of itself, and it does not  
re-

P

receive its Sound but from the *u*, with which it is accompanied; so that these two Letters together, form the Sound of *ou*. The *q* before the Diphthong *ui* makes but a Syllable; as *qui*, here.

## R.

The Letter *r* is naturally hard, and sometimes we double it in our Language to give it a greater hardness when there is Occasion; as, *Guerra*, *correre*, &c. sometimes we change it into an *i*, to soften the Pronunciation; as, *Acciajo*, Steel; *Danajo*, Money; instead of *Acciario*, *Gennajo*, January; *Febrajo*, February, for *Genaro*, *Febraro*.

## S.

This Letter has two Sounds in our Language; the one sharp; as, *scalzare*, *esca*, in which Examples the *s* is pronounced as if it was double; as in the Words *Cassa*, Box; *stesso*, self; the other Sound is soft, as *Rosa*, *Sposa*, *accusa*, &c. In the Beginning of Words, the *s* being before a Vowel, or before any of these Consonants *c*, *f*, *p*, *t*, is generally pronounced with great Force; as, *Salute*, Health; *santo*, holy; *Servo*, Servant; *Scala*, Ladder; *Sforzo*, Effort; *sperare*, to hope; *Studio*, Study.

S c

*Sc* before *e, i*, is pronounced as *sh* in *English*; as, *scegliere*, to chuse; *scemare*, to diminish; *lasciare*, to leave; read *shegliere*, *shemare*, *lsh-hare*.

## T.

The Letter *t* followed by a single Vowel, has the same Sound as in *English*: The Difficulty lies in the Words in which it is followed by an *i*, and another Vowel: In this Case it has two Sounds, the one hard; as in the Words *Malattia*, Sicknefs; *Sentiero*, Foot-path; *Simpatia*, Sympathy; in which Words the Syllable *ti* has the same Sound as in the *English* Words beginning with *ti*; as, *Tiberius*, *titular*.

The other Sound is softer, like *ts* in *English*; as, *Ambitione*, Ambition; *Amicitia*, Friendship; *Gratia*, Grace; *Punitione*, Punishment; read *Ambitione*, *Amicitia*, &c.

*Note*, Also the *t* is pronounced hard; first in the first and second Persons plural of the Present Tenses of the Verbs *Combattere*, to fight; *patire*, to suffer; *sentire*, to hear; so we say, *Combattiamo*, *patiamo*, *sentiamo*, *combattiate*, *patiate*, *sentiate*.

2. It is pronounced the same in the Words where the *t* is preceded by an *s*; as, *Carestia*, Penury; *Questione*, Question, &c.

*Note*, That in the words where the Syllable

b

ti

*u* is pronounced soft, the *Tuscans* write and pronounce *zi*; as, *Amicizia*, *Grazia*, *Grazie*, *Adonazione*.

## U.

The Letter *u* is pronounced in *Italian* like *oo* in the *English*; as, *Luna*, Moon, read *Loona*.

It is to be observed, the *u* before a Vowel is almost always a consonant; as, *Vasto*, *evero*, *Vizio*, *Volgo*.

In the Words *Uomo*, Man; *Uopo*, Need; *Uovo*, Egg, the *u* is a Vowel.

When the *u* is preceded by a Consonant, it does not form a Diphthong, but it is pronounced separately; as, *Consueto*, used; *persuaso*, persuaded; *Ruina*, Ruin.

It is not true, as some Grammarians pretend, that the Vowel *u* is not pronounced, when it is followed by an *o* in the same Syllable. They give us as an Example in the following Words, *Buono*, good; *Fuoco*, Fire; *Cuore*, Heart. The Rule is very false; for we pronounce these two Vowels so, as the Sound of both, although distinct, do not form together but one Syllable. After all, the true Pronunciation of it is so nice, that it is not to be attained by Precepts; and therefore you must learn it of those that pronounce good *Italian*.

X. This

X.

This Letter has been received in our Language, only to preserve it in some foreign Words; as, *Xanto*, *Xantippo*, *Xenocrate*, *Xerfe*; which however are pronounced as if they were written with an *s*, *Santippo*, *Senocrate*, *Serfe*.

We use one *s* or two *ss* in the Room of the *x*; that is to say, two *ss* before a Vowel, and one before a Consonant; as, *Alessandro*, *Essemplo*, for *Alexandro*, *Exemplo*; *estinto*, *estremo*, for *extinto*, *extremo*.

In the Words taken from the Latin, where the *x* is followed by a *c*, this *x* is changed into another *c*; as, *eccellente*, excellent; *eccitare*, to excite, from *excellens*, *excitare*.

Z.

This Letter is not a double Letter; as some Grammarians pretend; for if it was, it could not be doubled, as is practised; *Pazzo*, *Bellezza*, &c.

It has two Sounds, the one strong, which we call sharp; as, *Prezzo*, Price; *Saviezza*, Wisdom, pronouncing the *z* as *ts*. The other less sharp; as, *Zio*, Uncle; *Zelo*, Zeal, read *Dzio*, *Dzelo*. There is a Kind of a third Sound that result from the Use introduced by the *Tuscans*, who instead of the *z* followed by an *i* and another Vo-

b      a      wel,

wel, use the *z*, which forms a Sound between the first two; as, *Orazione*, *Divozione*, for *Oratione*, *Divotione*.

## S E C T. V.

### *Of the Incompatibility of Letters.*

If Softness in Languages is a Natural Beauty, without doubt it proceeds from a certain Harmony which the Disposition of Letters produces. The *Italian* Tongue, by the common Opinion of every Body the softest of all the living Languages, has in several Cases endeavoured to avoid the Meeting of Letters, which have, at least, as we think, a hard and disagreeable Sound. One may see in this Chapter the Letters that are compatible or incompatible between themselves; and by that judge, whether it is possible to form certain Sounds that the Ignorance of some Masters pretend to teach, and the Simplicity of Scholars strive to learn. Besides, what I shall say here will serve not only for the Orthography, but will also contribute very much to the Pronunciation.

It is a certain Rule, that the Vowels may receive before and after them any of the Consonants, and that the Consonants may be preceded or followed by any of the Vowels.

The Letter *b* receives before it *l*, *m*, *r*, *s*, but  
in

in different Syllables; as, *Albume*, the White of an Egg; *lambicare*, to distill; *Erba*, Herb; *dibattere*, to shake.

It admits after it, in the same Syllable, *l* and *r*, as, *Obligo*, Obligation; *Ombra*, Shade.

It takes one *r* after it, and in the same Syllable, in the Beginning of Words; as, *bramare*, to wish; *brutto*, ugly.

The Letter *c* cannot be put before any other Consonant but *l* and *r*; as, *Classe*, Class; *Clemenza*, Clemency; *Critica*, Critick; *scrivere*, to write; *incredibile*, incredible.

This Letter receives before it, but in different Syllables, *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*; as, *Calca*, a Crowd; *Incudine*, an Anvil; *Arcano*, a Secret; *ascondere*, to hide.

The *Italians* have not *ct* as the *English*; but they change the *c* into *t*; as, *Dottore*, a Doctor; *Aspetto*, Aspect; *Rispetto*, Respect; and in the *Latin* Words where the *ct* is preceeded by a Consonant, the *c* is suppressed; so of *sanctus* they make *santo*, of *Tinctura*, *tintura*, &c.

The Letter *d* does not admit any other Letter in the Beginning of a Word but *s*; as, *Sdegno*, Disdain; *sdegnare*, to disdain.

In the Middle of Words, but not in the same Syllable, it receives before it *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*; as, *Caldo*, Heat; *andare*, to go; *ardere*, to burn; *disdicevole*, indecent.

It does not admit any other Consonant after

b 3 it

it but the Letter *r*; as, *Drago*, a Dragon; *Drudo*, a Gallant.

The Letter *f* admits before it, but in different Syllables, *l, n, r, s*; as, *Alfiero*, an Ensign; *Enfiato*, Swelling; *Farfalla*, a Butterfly; *disfatto*, undone.

It may be followed by the Letters *l, r*, either in the Beginning or in the Middle of Words; as, *febile*, weak; *afflitto*, afflicted; *freddo*, cold; *raffrenare*, to curb.

The Letter *g* may be preceeded, but not in the same Syllable, by the Consonants *l, n, r*; as, *Volgo*, the Vulgar; *vangare*, to dig; *Argomento*, Argument.

In the Beginning of Words it is preceeded by the Letter *s*; as, *sguardo*, a Look; *sgridare*, to rebuke.

It may be followed either in the Beginning or in the Middle of Words, by *l, n, r*; as, *gli*, the; *Guadagno*, Gain; *grave*, heavy.

The *b* is never followed by a Consonant; it is commonly preceeded by *c* or *g*; as, *Occhi*, Eyes; *Ghirlanda*, a Garland.

The Letter *l* may be followed by all the others, except *n, r*, but in different Syllables.

It admits before it in the same Syllable *b, c, f, p, s, t*; as, *Blandizie*, Caresses; *Clamore*, Clamour; *Flauto*, Flute; *placido*, calm; *slogare*, to dislocate; *Atlante*, Atlas.

The Letter *m* receives before it *b, p*, but in diffe-

different Syllables ; as, *Ambasciata*, Embassy ; *Impero*, Empire.

It may be preceeded by an *l*, an *r*, and an *s*, but not in the same Syllable ; as, *Alma*, the Soul ; *Norma*, Rule ; *Risma*, Ream of Paper ; *Scisma*, Schism.

The Letter *n* does not admit in the same Syllable but the *g* before ; as, *ogni*, every ; *Guadagno*, Gain. In the Beginning of Words it is not to be found after the *g*, but in *Gnaffe*, Zookers.

The Letter *n* admits after it, *c*, *d*, *f*, *g*, *s*, *t*, *v*, *z*, but in different Syllables.

The Letter *p* can be followed by the Letters *l* and *r*, in the same Syllable ; as, *placare*, to appease ; *Prato*, Field.

It may be preceeded by the Letters *l*, *m*, *r*, *s*, in the Middle of Words, but in different Syllables ; as, *alpestre*, rugged ; *Imperio*, Empire ; *Arpa*, Harp ; *Sospetto*, Suspicion.

It receives the Letter *s* in the Beginning of Words, and by Consequence in the same Syllable ; as, *Spada*, Sword ; *Spettacolo*, Spectacle.

The Letter *q* admits no Consonant after it, but is always followed by the Vowel *u*, and before, it does not admit any but the *n* ; as, *dunque*, then ; *unqua*, never : As for the *c* 'tis but the Changing of the *q* that ought to be doubled ; as, *Acqua*, Water ; *nacque*, he was born ; *piacque*, he pleased.

The Letter *r* receives all the Letters after it ;

b 4 as,

as, *Barba*, a Beard; *Varco*, a Passage; *verde*, green, &c.

It admits before it, in the same Syllable, either in the Beginning or in the Middle of Words the Letters *b, c, d, f, g, p, t, v*; as, *Brodo*, Broth; *credere*, to believe; *Drudo*, a Gallant, &c.

The Letter *s* can be followed by all the Letters, either in the Beginning or in the Middle of Words, except the *z*.

It admits before it the Letters *l, n, r*, but not in the same Syllable; as, *Balsamo*, Balm; *Eccelfo*, high; *Consolazione*, Comfort; *arse*, he burned.

The Letter *t* admits after it the Letter *l*, but 'tis only in some foreign Words; as, *Atleta*, a Champion; *Atlante*, Atlas.

It admits also after it, in the same Syllable, the Letter *r*; as, *Trave*, Beam; *Scaltro*, Cunning.

The Letter *t* can be put in the same Syllable with the Letter *s*; as, *Istoria*, History; *Studio*, Study.

The Consonant *v* receives before it, *l, n, r, s*, but not in the same Syllable; as, *Selva*, Forest; *Convito*, Feast; *Disvario*, Difference.

This Letter admits no other Consonant after it but the *r*, when it is put instead of *p*; as, *souva*, upon; *Cavriuolo*, a Kid.

The

The Letter  $\alpha$  can neither be preceeded nor followed by any Consonant.

*Of the Accent.*

The Accent is the raising of one's Voice, or a remarkable Sound of one of the Syllables of the Words we pronounce.

We admit no other Accents in our Language but two, the Grave and the Acute; the Grave is expressed thus (''); the Acute thus (').

The Grave Accent is to be put upon the last Vowel that ends the Words, either whole or abridged.

The Words that are whole; as, *Giesù*, *Jesus*; *Corfù*, the Island of *Corfù*.

The Words with a syncope or abridged; as, *Onestà*, *Beltà*, *Virtù*, *Gioventù*, instead of *Onestate*, *Beltade*, *Virtude*, *Gioventude*.

We mark also with the same Accent the third Persons singular of the Verbs of the first Conjugation in the Preterit Tense; as, *cantò*, he sung; *amò*, he loved, to distinguish them from the first Persons singular in the Present of the Indicative Mood; *io canto*, I sing; *io amo*, I love. It serves also for the third Persons singular of the same Tenses in the Verbs of the second and third Conjugation; as, *credè*, he believed; *udì*, he heard; and for the first and third Persons singular of the Future in all the Verbs;

as,

as, *amerà*, I shall love; *amerà*, he shall love; *crederò*, I shall believe; *crederà*, he shall believe; *udirò*, I shall hear; *udirà*, he shall hear.

This Accent is also marked upon Words of one Syllable, either Nouns, Verbs, or Adverbs. In the Nouns; as, *Rè*, the King; *Pò* the River Po. In the Verbs; as, *hò*, I have; *può*, he can. In the Adverbs; as, *già*, already; *giù*, down; *sù*, above; *più*, more. But very often we put no accent upon the Monosyllables, because they are naturally accented, and they are always pronounced as if they had an Accent.

The Article *la*, the: and the Particle Copulative *e* and, have no Accent; but it is necessary to put the Accent upon the Adverb *là* there. It is the same with *e*: for with an Accent thus *è*, is the third Person singular of the Present of the Indicative Mood of the Verb *to be*, and signifies *is*. The Acute that is placed on the Penultima, or the last Syllable but one; serves either to avoid the Ambiguity of two Words of the same Spelling, but of different Signification; as, *già*, he went; and *già*, already: the first has two Syllables, and is the third Person of the Imperfect Tense of the Indicative Mood of the defective Verb *gire*, to go; and the second of one Syllable is an Adverb of Time, taken from the *Latin*, *jam*, already.

It

It serves also to shew that à Word has been shortned; as, *fuggìro*, they flew; *amàro*, they loved, instead of *Fuggiròno*, *amàrono*.

*Of the Apostrophe, or Elision.*

The Apostrophe, which is also called Elision, is the striking out of a Vowel before another; which is generally marked by an inverted *e* thus (*'*).

We use the Elision in all the Words ending with a Vowel, and followed by another that begins with a Vowel; as, *Amor' è cosa amara*, Love is a bitter thing.

The Words ending in *a*, though followed by a Vowel, suffer no Elision; *ancora ei vive*, he is still alive.

Proper Names follow the same Rule; *Annibale è'l mio Nome*, my Name is Annibal; *Roma è una gran Città*, Rome is a great City.

*Gli*, the, is never written with an Elision; *gli amori*, *gli Elementi*, *gli Occhi*, *gli Uccelli*: but you must pronounce these Words so nimbly as if the final Vowels and the Initial made a Diphthong, thus; *glia-mori*, *glia-lementi*, *glioc-chi*, *gliuc-celli*.

But when the Word that follows begins with an *i*, then the *i* of *gli* is drowned, and its Absence is marked with an Apostrophe; *gl' Ingegni*, *gl' Idoli*.

These

These Words *Animo*, Courage; *duro*, hard; *Volo*, Flight, suffer no Elision; as also the Nouns, whose last Vowel is preceded by a double Consonant; as, *deſtro*, right; *trifto*, ſorrowful; *aſpro*, ſharp.

The Particle, *che*, that; in Proſe being with an *h*, has no Elision; but in Verſe the *h* is drowned by the Word that follows; ſo that only the *c* is left: Here are two Examples, *gli Uomini che hanno Mogli ſono privi di Libertà*, Men that have Wives are deprived of Liberty.

*Se non ſe aliquanti c' hanno invidia al ſole.*

On the contrary, we add an *h* either in Proſe or Verſe at the End of Words ending in *ca*, *co*, *ga*, *go*, when the Elision is to be made before the Words beginning with *e* and *i*; as, *Dich'io*, ſay I, inſtead of *Dico io*; *Vengh'io*, come I.

## S E C T. V I.

*Of the Syllables that ought to be pronounced ſhort or long in the Nouns.*

The Pronunciation of Syllables, either ſhort or long, is one of the Difficulties of our Language, that embarſſes Foreigners, who do not know

know distinctly but one kind of Pronunciation. To facilitate however the Knowledge of it, I shall give here some general Rules, without pretending to comprehend all the Words of the *Italian* Tongue, which one may know better, if they consult my Dictionary, where all the Words are very carefully marked with a grave Accent, shewing what Words are short and what are long.

In the Words of one or two Syllables one cannot distinguish the Difference of the Long or Short; therefore, I shall speak only of the Words of several Syllables.

The Penultima, or the last Syllable but one, is always long,

1. In the Nouns ending in *ano*, or *ana*; as *umàno*, humane; *Settimàna*, a Week.

2. In the Words ending in *anza*, *enze*: as *Costàntza*, Constancy; *Baldàntza*, Pride; *Prudènza*, Prudence; *Penitènza*, Penitence.

3. The Nouns ending in *ca* for the Singular, and *che* for the Plural, have their Penultima sometimes long and sometimes short. The Words of the first Kind are these, *Fatica*, Labour; *Festuca*, a Mote; *Formica*, an Ant; *Lumaca*, a Snail; *Mollica*, Crum of Bread; *Monarca*, a Monarch; *Nemica*, a She Enemy; *Ortica*, a Nettle; *Pastinaca*, a Parsnip; *Patriarca*, Patriarch; *Ricerca*, Inquiry; *Spelonca*, a Grotto; *Tartaruca*, Tortoiseshel; *Teriaca*, Treacle; *Verruca*, a Wart; *Vessica*, a Bladder.

The

The Nouns of this Termination are all of the second Kind, that is to say, they have their Penultima short; *Càrica*, Charge; *Mànica*, Sleeve, &c.

4. The Nouns ending in *ce*; as, *tenàce*, clammy; *Fenice*, Phoenix; *feroce*, fierce, &c.

Except *Anice*, Anni-seed; *Artefice*, Artisan; *Calice*, a Cup; *Camice*, an Albe or Surplice; *Carnefice*, an Executioner; *Cimice*, a Bug; *Codice*, a Book of Law; *Complice*, an Accomplise; *Indice*, Index; *Forbice*, Sizzars; *Giudice*, Judge; *Mantice*, Bellows; *Orefice*, a Goldsmith; *Pomice*, a Pumice Stone; *Pontefice*, the Pope; *partecipe*, partaking; *semplice*, simple; *triplice*, three-fold.

5. The Words ending in *cia*, *cio*, *chia*, *chio*; *Bonaccia*, a Calm at Sea; *Donnaccia*, a bad Woman; *Cornacchia*, a Crow; *Comacchio*, a Town in Italy.

6. The Words ending in *ina* and *ino*; *Fucina*, a Forge; *Indovino*, a Sooth-sayer; *divino*, divine.

Except *àsino*, an Ass; *àcino*, the Stone of Grapes; *Daino*, a Fallow Deer; *Frassino*, an Ash Tree; *gemino*, double; *pristino*, ancient; *Zaino*, a Budget.

7. All the Words in *oso*; *ritroso*, peevish; *amoroso*, amorous; *favoloso*, fabulous; *litigioso*, litigious; *misterioso*, mysterious.

8. All the Words in *iva*; *Aspettativa*, Ex-  
pe-

plantation, *Oliva*, Olive; *Sempreviva*, House-leek.

9. All the Words in *era* or *iera*; *Pantera*, a Panther; *Primavera*, the Spring; *Riviera*, a River.

Except *Camera*; a Chamber; *Cifera*, Cipher; *Golera*, Choler; *Efimera*, a Quotidian Fever; *Fodera*, Lining; *Lettera*, a Letter; *Maschera*, a Mask; *mifera*, miserable; *Nacchera*, a Rattle; *opera*, work; *Passera*, a Sparrow; *Pinzochera*, a Bigot; *Zinghera*, a Gipsy; *Tempera*, a Temper; *Vipera*, a Viper; *Zacchera*, Dirt; *Zazzerà*, a Head of Hair.

10. All the Words in *ela*: *Candela*, a Candle; *Cautela*, Caution.

11. All the Nouns in *eso* and *oso*: *Paleso*, Publick; *difeso*, defended; *famoso*, famous; *favoloso*, fabulous.

12. All the Nouns in *me*: *Costume*, Custom; *Letame*, Dung-hill; *Ossame*, an Heap of Bones.

13. All the Nouns in *ato*: *amato*, loved; in *eta*, *eto*; *Pianeta*, a Planet; *Laurèto*, a Thicket of Laurel Trees: in *ito*: *vestito*, dressed: in *uto*: *creduto*, believed; *contenuto*, contained.

Except, *Apostata*, an Apostate; *Fegato*, Liver; *Sabato*, Saturday, *Abito*, a Suit of Cloaths.

The Penultima is always short,

1. In all the Nouns ending in *ape*: *Canape*, Hemp; in *ipo*: *Principe*, a Prince.

2. In

2. In all the Nouns in *bile* ; *amabile* , lovely ; *volubile* , changeable ; *incredibile* , incredible.

3. In all the Words in *ine* ; *Ordine* , Order ; *origine* , Origine ; *Vertigine* , Giddiness.

Except *Confine* , a Limit ; *Moine* ; Cajolings or Careffes.

4. In all the Nouns ending in *elo* and *ola* : *Angelo* , an Angel ; *Favola* , a Fable ; *Tavola* , a Table.

5. In all the Words in *pia* , *pio* , when the *ia* , *to* , are of two Syllables ; *Indopia* , Want ; *Còpia* , Plenty.

*Of the Syllables that ought to be pronounced short or long in Verbs.*

We have more certain Rules for the Syllables of Verbs, to know when they are to be pronounced long or short, than we have for the Nouns; therefore what I shall say here will be very useful to learn.

The Penultima is always long,

1. In all the Persons singular of all Tenses that have some Syllables more than the third Person singular of the Present of the Indicative Mood ; *Amàvo* , *Credèvo* , *Sentivo* , *Amài* , *Credèi* , *Sentij* , *Amàssi* , *Credèssi* , *Sentissi* , *Amarèi* , *Cederèi* , *Sentirèi* , *Amerài* , *Cederài* , *Sentirài* .

The first and third Person of the Future of the

the Indicative Mood are also long ; but the Accent being upon the last Syllable, the Stress must be laid upon that: *amerò, amerà, crederò, crederà, sentirò, sentirà*.

2. In the first Persons plural of the Present, of the Imperfect, Perfect, and Future Tenses of the Indicative, of the Present, and of the first Imperfect Tense of the Conjunctive Mood; *amiamo, crediamo, sentiamo, amavamo, credevamo, sentivamo, amammo, credemmo, sentimmo, ameremo, crederemo, sentiremo, ameremmo, crederemmo, sentiremmo*.

3. In all the second Persons plural of all the Tenses; *amate, credete, sentite, amavate, credevate, sentivate; amerete, crederete, sentirete; amiate, crediate, sentiate; amereste, credereste; sentireste*.

4. In all the third Persons plural of the Future of the indicative Mood; *ameranno, crederanno, sentiranno*.

The Penultima is always short,

1. In all the first Persons plural of the Second Imperfect Tense of the Conjunctive Mood; *amassimo, credessimo, sentissimo*.

2. In all the third Persons plural of all Tenses, except those of the Future; *amano, credono, sentono; amavano, credevano, sentivano; amarono, credèrono, sentirono; amino, credano, sentano; amerèbbero, crederèbbero, sentirebbero; amassero, credèssero, sentissero*.

C

S E-

## S E C T. VII.

*Of Points or Stops.*

It is of no small Importance in Orthography, or true Writing, to observe with Care *Points or Stops*, that is, those Marks which are made use of to distinguish the Parts of Sentences, and which are seven in Number, viz.

1. A Comma	} thus marked {	,
2. A Colon		:
3. A Semi-colon		;
4. A Period, or Full Stop		.
5. A Note of Interrogation		?
6. A Note of Admiration		!
7. A Parenthesis		( )

A Comma (,) marks the little Pauses one makes in a Discourse, both to grace it, and to make it clearer to the Reader.

A Colon (:) marks a Sense that seems to be compleat; but so that something may still be added to it.

A Semi-colon (;) marks a short Member of a Sentence, which though it has a Sense of itself, yet contributes towards the making up of a compleat Period.

A Period or Full Stop (.) shews, that the Sense of the Sentence is full.

A No-

A Note of Interrogation (?) is used when a Question is asked.

A Note of Admiration (!) where one admires or cries out for Wonder; it serves also to express Grief, Pain, and other violent Passions.

A Parenthesis () incloses within its two Figures, a Sentence by itself, which may be either used or omitted, and yet the Sense remain entire.

### *Of Analogy.*

Analogy is that Part of Grammar which treats of all the Words of a Language, and distributes them into certain Classes or Ranks, commonly called *Parts of Speech*, which in *Italian* are Nine in Number, viz.

- |                    |                      |
|--------------------|----------------------|
| 1. The Article.    | 6. The Adverb.       |
| 2. The Noun.       | 7. The Conjunction.  |
| 3. The Pronoun.    | 8. The Preposition.  |
| 4. The Verb.       | 9. The Interjection. |
| 5. The Participle. |                      |

## C A P. II.

## Of the Article.

**A**RTICLES are Particles before Nouns, to shew their Genders either Masculine, or Feminine; their Number, either singular or plural; and their Cases, either direct or oblique.

There are seven and twenty Articles in *Italian*, viz.

Masculine, Sing.	Masculine, Plur.
1. <i>il</i> , the	14. <i>degli</i> , of the
2. <i>del</i> , of the	15. <i>agli</i> , to the
3. <i>al</i> , to the	16. <i>dagli</i> , from the
4. <i>dal</i> , from the	Feminine, Sing.
Plur.	17. <i>la</i> , the
5. <i>i</i> , the	18. <i>della</i> , of the
6. <i>dei</i> , <i>de'</i> of the	19. <i>alla</i> , to the
7. <i>ai</i> , <i>a'</i> to the	20. <i>dalla</i> , from the
8. <i>dai</i> , <i>da'</i> from the	Plur.
Sing.	21. <i>le</i> , the
9. <i>lo</i> , the	22. <i>delle</i> , of the
10. <i>dello</i> , of the	23. <i>alle</i> , to the
11. <i>allo</i> , to the.	24. <i>dalle</i> , from the
12. <i>dallo</i> , from the	25. <i>di</i> , of
Plur.	26. <i>a</i> , to
13. <i>gli</i> , the	27. <i>da</i> , from.

Before we engage in discoursing of the Articles, it will be necessary to make a particular Ob-

Observation: That the greatest Part of Gram-  
 marians divide the Articles into Definite and In-  
 definite, without understanding well what they  
 mean by such a Distinction. Those Particles cal-  
 led *Articles* are properly Prepositions put before  
 Nouns, and sometimes before Pronouns, the  
 Infinitive of Verbs, and certain Adverbs. Now  
 these Articles are Definite or Indefinite, accor-  
 ding as their Signification, when joined with  
 the Noun, is either determined or undetermi-  
 ned. The Particles *di, a, da*, are said to be  
 Indefinite, and *il, del, al, dal, lo, dello, al-  
 lo, dallo*, and their plurals Definite; but that  
 is only partly true. For all these Articles are  
 sometimes Definite and sometimes Indefinite,  
 according to the different Signification of the  
 Nouns they are construed with: as for Example,  
*di* is definite when joined to a proper Name; *la  
 Gloria di Dio*, the Glory of God; *parlo di Pie-  
 tro*, I speak of Peter.

*Di* is indefinite in the following Epressions :  
*è un Comando di Rè*, 'tis a King's Command; *è  
 un tratto di Villano*, 'tis a knavish Trick.

*A* is definite in this Sentence, *ho detto a Pie-  
 tro*, I told Peter; but it is indefinite in this Expres-  
 sion: *non ne parlate a nissuno*, say nothing of it  
 to any Body.

The Oblique Cases of all Articles are also de-  
 finite or indefinite, according to the Significa-  
 tion of the Words they are joined with.

c 3 . They

They are definite in the following Examples: *la Grandezza di Dio*, the Greatness of God; *la Potenza del Re*, the King's Power; *ho parlato al Re*, I spoke to the King; *parlo della Guerra di Fiandra*, I speak of the war of Flanders, &c.

But they are indefinite in the following Examples: *l'Uomo è un Animale ragionevole*, Man is a rational Animal; *la Donna è stata creata per aiuto dell' Uomo*, Woman was created for an Help to Man; *gli Uomini sono soggetti a molte Infermità*, Men are subject to several Diseases; *la Virtù è amabile*, Virtue is amiable; *ho del Vino in Cantina*, I have Wine in my Cellar; *parlate de' Principi con rispetto*, speak respectfully of Princes; *esser civile alle Dame*, to be civil to the Ladies.

By all these Examples it plainly appears, that most Grammarians have very wrong Notions about Articles; and that when the Article restraineth the Sense to a particular Thing, it is definite; and when we speak generally, without restraining to particular Things, it is indefinite.

CHAP.

## C H A P. III.

*Of the Noun.*

**A** Noun is a Word that serves to express a Thing without any Circumstance either of Time or Person; as, *Dio*, God; *Libro*, Book; *Uomo*, Man; *Casa*, House; *buono*, good; *grande*, great; *bello*, handsome.

A Noun is divided into { Substantive  
and  
Adjective.

A Noun Substantive signifies a Thing subsisting of it self, and to whole Signification nothing needs to be added; as, *il Sole*, the Sun; *la Luna*, the Moon; *il Mondo*, the World; *Donna*, Woman.

A Noun Substantive is sub-divided into Proper, and Appellative. A proper Noun is the particular Name of any singular Thing; as, *Pietro*, Peter; *Guglielmo*, William; *Anna*, Anne; *Parigi*, Paris; *Londra*, London.

An Appellative or common Noun is that which is applicable to all Things of the same Kind; as *Casa*, House; *Città*, City; *Servo*, Servant; *Montagna*, Mountain; *Fiume*, River.

A Noun Adjective signifies nothing of it self, but being joined to the Substantive, expresses its Qualities and Circumstances; as, *buono*, good;

c 4

*gran-*

*grande*, great; *bello*, handsome; *felice*, happy; signify nothing unless they be joined to a Substantive; ex. *buon Vino*, good Wine; *un grand' Uomo*, a great Man; *un bel Giardino*, a fine Garden; *un felice Successo*, a happy Success.

There are Four Things called Accidents, to be considered in Nouns, viz.

- |                |                    |
|----------------|--------------------|
| 1. The Gender. | 3. The Case.       |
| 2. The Number. | 4. The Comparison. |

### S E C T. I.

#### *Of the Gender.*

The Gender is properly that which shews the Difference of Sexes.

There are two Genders in *Italian*, viz.

The Masculine marked by *il*, or *lo*; ex. *il Rè*, the King; *lo Studio*, the Study.

The Feminine marked by *la*; ex. *la Regina*, the Queen; *la Strada*, the Street.

Although the primitive and proper Uses of Genders, be only to distinguish one Sex from another; yet the *Italians*, like the *Greeks* and *Latins*, observe that Distinction even in inanimate Things; so that there is not one Noun in *Italian*, but what is either Masculine or Feminine.

All Nouns in *Italian* are terminated by one of these Four Vowel, *a, e, i, o*; for the two genders.

Three

There are no other Nouns ending in *u* but *Giesù*, Jesus; *Corfù*, the Island of *Corfù*; *Perù*, the Province of *Perù*; *Gru*, a Crane; *tu*, thou. As for *Gioventù*, Youth; *Servitù*, Slavery; *Virtù*, Vertue, they are an Abbreviation of *Gioventude*, *Servitude*, *Virtude*, &c.

There are Rules to know the Genders of Substantives; but they are liable to so many exceptions, that the best Way would be to consult my Dictionary, in which I have been very exact in setting down the Gender of every Noun; yet I will endeavour to give some general Rules to save the Beginners the Trouble to look in the Dictionary for the Gender of every Word.

*Of the Nouns ending in A.*

Nouns ending in *a* are commonly feminine, and make their Plural by changing the *a* into *e*; as, *la Stella*, the Star; *le Stelle*, the Stars; *la Donna*, the Woman; *le Donne*, the Women.

There are some Nouns in *a*, which are masculine; such as proper Names of Men; as, *Lucca*, Luke; *Enea*, Eneas; *Pitagora*, Pithagoras; some Nouns appellative; as *Poeta*, a Poet; *Papa*, a Pope; *Profeta*, a Prophet. But these Nouns Masculine end in *i* in the Plural; *i Poeti*, *i Papi*, *i Profeti*.

The Nouns ending in *a*, with an Accent over it, have no Plural, but keep the Termination  
of

of the Singular; as, *la Bontà, le Bontà; la Generosità, le Generosità*.

All Nouns terminated in *ca* and in *ga*, take an *b* after the *c*, and *g* in their Plural; as *Fatica*, Labour; *Fatiche*, Labours; *Piaga*, Wound; *Piaghe*, Wounds.

The Nouns *Tema*, a Theme; *Sistema*, a System; *Pianeta*, a Planet, are of the masculine Gender; but *Tema*, when it signifies Fear; and *Pianeta*, a Priest's Cope, are of the feminine Gender.

#### *Of the Nouns ending in E.*

All the Nouns ending in *e*, of whatsoever Gender they may be, Substantives or Adjectives, change the *e* into *i* in the Plural; as, *Amore*, Love; *Amori*, Loves; *grande*, great; *grandi*, great.

#### EXCEPTIONS.

Of all the Nouns ending in *e*, there are but four that do not change their Termination in the Plural; viz. *il Re*, the King; *i Re*, the Kings; *la Specie*, the Kind; *le Specie*, the Kinds; *la Effigie*, the Effigy; *le Effigie*, the Effigies; *la Superficie*, the Surface; *le Superficie*, the Surfaces.

*Mille*, a Thousand, preceded by another Number, makes *Mila* in the Plural; *Mille Scudi*, a Thousand Crowns; *Due mila Scudi*, Two Thousand Crowns.

*Ma-*

*Moglie*, a Wife; makes *Mogli* in the Plural, leaving out the *e*; *la Cara Moglie*, the Dear Wife; *le Care Mogli*, the Dear Wives.

We have some Nouns that may terminate in *e* and in *o*; but the First of these Terminations is more proper for the Prose, and the Second for Verses; as, *Cavaliero*, and *Cavaliere*, Knight; *Destriero*, and *Destriere*, a Horse; *Pensiero*, and *Pensiere*, a Thought; *Corriero*, and *Corriere*, a Courier.

### *Genders of Nouns ending in E.*

All Nouns ending in *me* are masculine as, *il Fiume*, the River; *il Costume*, the Custom; *Lezame*, a Dung-hill.

Except *Fame*, Hunger; *Speme*, Hope; that are feminine.

Nouns ending in *re* are masculine; except *Madre*, Mother; *Febbre*, Fever; *Polvere*, Dust; *Torre*, Tower; that are feminine: *Cenere*, Ashes; *Folgore*, a Thunder-bolt; *Carcere*, a Prison; *Lepre*, a Hare; are of both Genders.

Almost all Nouns ending in *ore* are masculine; *l'Amore*, the Love; *il Fiore*, the Flower, *il Dolor*, the Grief or Pain. &c.

Nouns ending in *ente* are masculine; *il Dente*, the Tooth; *il Serpente*, the Serpent.

Except *la Gente*, the People; *la Mente*, the Mind; that are feminine.

All

All the other Terminations are liable to so many Exceptions, that it is impossible the Reader should reap any Benefit from the Rules we could give him.

### Of Nouns ending in *i*.

The Number of Nouns ending in *i* is very small; and they are all masculine; such as the Days of the Week; *Lunedì*, Monday; *Martedì*, Tuesday, &c. Proper Names of Men; as, *Giovanni*, John; *Luigi*, Lewis, &c. Names of Cities; as, *Parigi*, Paris; *Napoli*, Naples, &c. The Cardinal Numbers; as, *Dieci*, Ten; *Undici*, Eleven; *Venti*, Twenty, &c. Names of Families; as, *Neri*, *Mattei*, *Medici*, &c.

All these Nouns ending in *i*, if we were to decline them in the Plural, would keep the same Termination; as, *il Dì*, the Day; *i Dì*, the Days.

The Noun *pari*, equal; is of both Genders, and both Numbers; *pari vostro*, your equal; *pari vostra*, your equal.

### Of Nouns ending in *o*.

All Nouns ending in *o* are masculine; and change the *o* into *i* in the Plural; as, *il Libro*, the Book; *i Libri*, the Books.

Except *Mano*, the Hand, which is feminine; *la Mano*, the Hand; *le Mani*, the Hands;  
The

The Word *Tempora*, which is the Plural of *Tempo*, still keeps its antient Termination; but it signifies only the Ember Weeks; as, *le Quattro Tempora*, the Four Ember Weeks.

*Uomo*, Man, not only changes the *o* into *i* in the Plural, but it takes a Syllable more; as, *Uomo*, Man; *Uomini*, Men.

*Turbo*, a Whirl-wind, follows the same Termination; *Turbini*, Whirl-winds.

*Observations upon the Nouns in aro.*

Nouns substantive in *aro*, may change their Termination into *ajo*; ex. *Gennaro*, and *Gennajo*, January; *Febraro*, and *Febrajo*, February; *Scolaro*, and *Scolajo*, a Scholar: In forming the Plural, if the Nouns are terminated in *aro*, the *o* is changed into *i*, according to the general Rule; *Scolaro*, *Scolari*; but if it is terminated in *ajo*, you must strike off the last *o*, leaving *ai*; as, *Scolajo*, *Scolai*, &c.

*Of Nouns in co and in go.*

Nouns ending in *co*, and *go*, of two Syllables, take an *b* in the Plural; as, *Fico*, a Fig; *Fichi*, Figs; *Cieco*, Blind; *ciechi*, blind; *Luogo*, a Place; *Luoghi*, Places.

Except *Greco*, a Grecian; *Porco*, an Hog; that make *Greci*, *Porci* in the Plural.

All other Nouns in *co* and *go* of more than two Sylla-

Syllables, do not admit of the *b* in the Plural ;  
as, *Amico*, a Friend; *Amici*, Friends.

Except *Albergo*, an Inn, *Alberghi*.

*Antico*, *antichi*, antient.

*Astrologo*, *Astrologhi*, and *Astrologi*, an Astro-  
loger.

*Beccafio*, *Beccafichi*, a Figsnapper.

*Bisfolco*, *Bisfolchi*, a Clown.

*Castigo*, *Castighi*, Chastisement.

*Catafalco*, *Catafalchi*, a Mausoleum.

*Dialogo*, *Dialoghi*, a Dialogue.

*Fiamingo*, *Fiaminghi*, a Flemming.

*Reciproco*, *Reciprochi*, Reciprocal.

*Siniscalco*, *Siniscalchi*, a Seneschal.

*Tedesco*, *Tedeschi*, a German.

*Traffico*, *Traffichi* Traffick, or Trade.

#### *Formation of the Plural of Nouns in io.*

Nouns ending in *io*, if these two Letters make but one Syllable, make their plural by striking off the last *o*; ex. *Ba-cio*, a Kiss; *Baci*, Kisses; *Figlio*, a Son; *Figli*, Sons; *Rag-gio*, a Beam of the Sun; *Raggi*, Beams, &c.

Sometimes we admit of two *ii*, to avoid the Equivocation in the Nouns; as, *Tempii*, Temples; *Principii*, Beginnings; to distinguish them from *Tempi*, Times; *Principi*, Princes.

Now the general Rule for using two *ii* in the Plural, is, when the Diphthong *io* in the Singular makes

makes two Syllables; ex. *Incendio*, a Conflagration; *Incendii*, Conflagrations; *Nazio*, Native; *Nazii*, Natives.

To know when the Diphthong *io* forms one or two Syllables, I could not give any other Rules, but when the Nouns that end in *cio*, *chio*, *gio*, *glio*, make one Syllable of *io*, ex. *Impaccio*, *Impacci*, Embarrassment; *Occhio*, *Occhi*, Eye; *Paggio*, *Paggi*, Page; *Scoglio*, *Sco- gli*, Rock; *Figlio*, *Figli*, Son.

Note, that the *Tuscans*, instead of using two *i*, write one *i* thus, *j. studj, varj*.

#### *Of the Nouns in U.*

We have already said, there is no Nouns in *Italian* ending in *u*, but that of our Saviour, *Giesù*, Jesus; *tu*, thou; *Peru*, the Province of *Peru*; *Corfu*, the Island of *Corfu*; *Gru*, a Crane. As for *Virtù*, Vertue; *Gioven- zù*, Youth; and the like; I take them to be Nouns abridged of *Virtute* or *Virtude*; *Gioventu- de*, or *Gioventude*.

#### *Of the Augmentatives.*

We have this advantage in our Lan- guage, that by adding a Syllable to our Nouns, we increase or diminish their Signification; as, *Cappello*, a Hat; *Cappellino*, or *Cappella- cio*,

*cio*, a large Hat; *Cappelletto*, or *Cappelluccio*; a little Hat.

The Termination of the Augmentatives, are in *one*, in *accio*, or *accia*. The First increases the Signification of the Thing; the other make something bad, or despicable in it, ex:

*Donna*, a Woman; *Donnone*, a large Woman; *Donnaccia*, a bad Woman; *Casa*, a House; *Casone*, a large House; *Casaccia*, an old ruinous House.

*Note*, that the Augmentatives cannot be formed of all Nouns, because, sometimes they would signify a quite different Thing; as for ex. *Tinca*, a Trench; if one would form of it a Noun in *one*, he would make a great blunder.

*Note*, also, that the Augmentatives in *one* imply something vile and despicable; ex. *Dormiglione*, a great Sluggard; *Gocciolone*, a Dunce, a Ninny.

The Augmentatives in *one* are masculines, though they are formed of Nouns feminine; as *Porta*, F. makes *Portone*, M. *Casa*, F. *Casone*, M.

We have another Kind of Augmentatives in *ame*, which signify a great Quantity, or great Number; ex. *Osso*, a Bone, *Osname*, a great Quantity, or a great Heap of Bones; *Gente*, People, *Gentame*, a Multitude of People.

Our Language has also Augmentatives in *aglia*, but marks with it something vile and despicable;

cable; ex. *Cane*, a Dog; *Canaglia*, the Mob, the Dregs of the People; *Gente*, People; *Gen- taglia*, the Mobility, the common People.

*Note*, also, that there are some Nouns that have all the abovesaid Terminations without being Augmentatives: ex. in *one*, we have *Bastone*, a Club in *Ame*, as, *Stame*, Yarn; in *Accio*, as *Laccio*, a Gin, or Snare; in *Accia*, as *Fac- cia*, the Face; in *Agia*, as *Maglia*, a Mail.

### *Of the Diminutives.*

Although the Diminutives are augmented with one or more Syllables, they lessen, however, the Signification of their Primitives: Their different Terminations are;

In *ello*: as *Arditello*.

In *etto*: as *Sdegnosetto*.

In *ino*: as *Martellino*.

In *olo*: as *Lacciuolo*.

In *otto*: as *Sempliciotto*.

In *uccio*: as *Andreuccio*.

In *uzzo*: as *Pensieruzzo*.

It is not very easy to know the true Signification of Diminutives; since they signify sometimes something genteel and pretty; as, *un Fanciullino*, a pretty Child; and sometimes they imply something despicable; as, *una Feminnuccia*, a poor ordinary Woman.

*Note*, that there are several Diminutives that

d do

do not follow the common Way of others ; as, *Bastone*, *Bastoncino* ; *Porta*, *Porticella*.

Note, also, that there are some Nouns ending in *ino*, *ello*, *etto*, &c. that are not always Diminutives ; since there are several that are Primitives ; ex. *Cittadino*, a Citizen ; *Coltello*, a Knife ; *Diletto*, Delight.

### Of the Adjectives.

Adjectives in our Language have three Terminations ; in *o*, for the Masculine ; in *a*, for the Feminine : and in *e*, for both Genders : ex. *il caro Sposo*, the dear Spouse ; *la cara Moglie*, the dear Wife ; *il dolce Sonno*, the sweet Sleep ; *la dolce Stagione*, the sweet Season.

Adjectives in *o* end in *i* in the Plural ; *bello*, *belli*, *casto*, *casti* : Adjectives in *a* end in *e*, *bella*, *belle* ; *casta*, *caste* : Adjectives in *e* end in *i*, both for Masculine and Feminine ; *i dolci Baci*, the sweet Kisses ; *le dolci Parole*, the sweet Words.

Several Adjectives taking the Article before, become Substantives, ex. *il Dolce mi piace*, I love sweet Things ; *il Bello è amato da tutti*, every body loves what is handsome.

## S E C T. II.

### Of the Number.

The Number is an Accident of Nouns, which shews

shews the Difference that is betwixt one and several Things.

And so it is either { Singular,  
or  
Plural.

The Singular speaketh of one single Thing ; as, *il Libro*, the Book ; *la Casa*, the House.

The Plural speaketh of more Things than one ; as, *i Libri*, the Books ; *le Case*, the Houses.

The Plural is generally formed by changing the Termination of the Singular, for the Nouns in *o*, and in *e*, into *i* ; as, *Libro*, Book ; *Libri*, Books ; *Madre*, Mother ; *Madri*, Mothers ; for the Nouns in *a*, into *e* ; as, *Casa*, House ; *Casse*, Houses.

### E X C E P T I O N S .

1. Some Nouns in *o* and in *e* are generally used in the Singular ; as, *Oro*, Gold ; *Argento*, Silver ; *Cento*, an Hundred.

There are some Nouns ending in *e* that do not alter their Termination in the Plural ; as, *il Re*, *i Re* ; *la Specie*, *le Specie* ; *la Superficie*, *le Superficie* ; *l'Effigie*, *le Effigie*.

Singular Nouns ending in *a*, of the masculine Gender, make their Termination in *i* in the Plural ; as, *Poeta*, *Poeti* ; *Profeta*, *Profeti* ; *Papa*, *Papi*.

All Nouns ending in *a*, with an Accent, are  
d 2 still

still the same, both in the Singular and Plural; as, *la Bontà, le Bontà, la Maestà, le Maestà, &c.*

Nouns ending in *i*, keep the same Termination in the Plural; as, *il Dì, i Dì; il Lunedì, i Lunedì, &c.*

Singular Nouns in *u*, are still the same in the Plural; as, *la Virtù, le Virtù; la Gioventù, le Gioventù, &c.*

Nouns of Cardinal Numbers are the same in the Plural; as, *Tre, Three; Quattro, Four; Otto, Eight, &c.*

### S E C T. III.

#### *Of the Case or Declension.*

The Case is properly the ending or Termination of a Noun, which serves to distinguish it according to its several Significations. There is no such Thing as different Cases in *Italian*, no more than in *English*; but we have borrowed that Word from the *Latins*, whose Nouns have six distinct Terminations, and distinct Significations, *viz.* The Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, and Ablative: But instead of different Terminations, we make use of Articles, to express the various Senses of a Word.

The Declension of Nouns is the Manner of turning and changing them according to their several Significations, both in the Singular and Plu-

Plural; which, as I hinted before, is performed in *Italian*, as in *English*, by the help of Articles.

*Declension of Nouns of the masculine Gender, beginning with a Consonant.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. <i>il Libro</i> , the Book.	Nom. <i>i Libri</i> , the Books.
Gen. <i>del Libro</i> , of the Book.	Gen. <i>dei</i> , or <i>de' Libri</i> , of the Books.
Dat. <i>al Libro</i> , to the Book.	Dat. <i>Ai</i> or <i>a' Libri</i> , to the Books.
Abl. <i>dal Libro</i> , from the Book.	Abl. <i>Dai</i> , or <i>da' Libri</i> , from the Books.

*Nouns of the feminine Gender, beginning with a Consonant, are thus declined,*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. <i>la Casa</i> , the House.	Nom. <i>le Case</i> , the Houses.
Gen. <i>Della Casa</i> , of the House.	Gen. <i>delle Case</i> , of the Houses.
Dat. <i>Alla Casa</i> , to the House.	Dat. <i>alle Case</i> , to the Houses.
Abl. <i>Dalla Casa</i> , from the House.	Abl. <i>dalle Case</i> , from the Houses.

*Nouns ending in a, of the masculine Gender, are thus declined,*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. <i>il Poeta</i> , the Poet.	Nom. <i>i Poeti</i> , the Poets.
Gen. <i>del Poeta</i> , of the Poet.	Gen. <i>dei</i> , or <i>de' Poeti</i> , of the Poets.
Dat. <i>al Poeta</i> , to the Poet.	Dat. <i>ai</i> , or <i>a' Poeti</i> , to the Poets.
Abl. <i>dal Poeta</i> , from the Poet.	Abl. <i>dai</i> , or <i>da' Poeti</i> , from the Poets.

*Nouns ending in à with an Accent, are thus declined,*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. <i>la Maestà</i> , the Majesty.	Nom. <i>le Maestà</i> , the Majesties.
Gen. <i>della Maestà</i> , of the Majesty.	Gen. <i>delle Maestà</i> , of the Majesties.
Dat. <i>alla Maestà</i> , to the Majesty.	Dat. <i>alle Maestà</i> , to the Majesties.
Abl. <i>dalla Maestà</i> , from the Majesty.	Abl. <i>dalle Maestà</i> , from the Majesties.

*Declension of Nouns of the masculine Gender, beginning with an S followed by a Consonant.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. <i>lo Studio</i> , the Study.	Nom. <i>gli Studj</i> , the Studies.
Gen. <i>dello Studio</i> , of the Study.	Gen. <i>degli Studj</i> , of the Studies.
Dat. <i>allo Studio</i> , to the Study.	Dat. <i>agli Studj</i> , to the Studies.
Abl. <i>dallo Studio</i> , from the Study.	Abl. <i>dagli Studj</i> , from the Studies.

*Nouns*

*Nouns of the masculine Gender, beginning with a Vowel, are thus declined.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. <i>l'Amore</i> , the Love.	Nom. <i>gli Amori</i> , the Loves.
Gen. <i>dell'Amore</i> , of the Love.	Gen. <i>degli Amori</i> , of the Loves.
Dat. <i>all'Amore</i> , to the Love.	Dat. <i>agli Amori</i> , to the Loves.
Abl. <i>dall'Amore</i> , from the Love.	Abl. <i>dagli Amori</i> , from the Loves.

*Nouns of the feminine Gender, beginning with a Vowel, are thus declined.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. <i>l'Anima</i> , the Soul.	Nom. <i>Le Anime</i> , the Souls.
Gen. <i>dell'Anima</i> , of the Soul.	Gen. <i>delle Anime</i> , of the Souls.
Dat. <i>all'Anima</i> , to the Soul.	Dat. <i>alle Anime</i> , to the Souls.
Abl. <i>dall'Anima</i> , from the Soul.	Abl. <i>dalle Anime</i> , from the Souls.

*Declension of proper Names.*

Proper Names of Men, Women, Cities, and Viages, are generally declined in the following Manner; where it is to be observed, that if those

d 4 Nouns

Nouns be of the singular Number, they have no Plural ; and if of the Plural , they have no Singular.

## SINGULAR.

Nom. *Pietro* , Peter.  
Gen. *di Pietro* , of Peter.  
Dat. *a Pietro* , to Peter.  
Abl. *da Pietro* , from Peter.

## SINGULAR.

Nom. *Maria* , Mary.  
Gen. *di Maria* , of Mary.  
Dat. *a Maria* , to Mary.  
Abl. *da Maria* , from Mary.

## SINGULAR.

Nom. *Londra* , London.  
Gen. *di Londra* , of London.  
Dat. *a Londra* , to London.  
Abl. *da Londra* , from London.

## SINGULAR.

Nom. *Parigi* , Paris.  
Gen. *di Parigi* , of Paris.  
Dat. *a Parigi* , to Paris.  
Abl. *da Parigi* , from Paris.

When those proper Names begin with a Vowel, the *i* is cut off in the Article *di*, and we add *d* to the Article *a*.

## SINGULAR.

Nom. *Antonio* , Anthony.  
Gen. *d'Antonio* , of Anthony.  
Dat. *ad Antonio* , to Anthony.  
Abl. *da Antonio* , from Anthony.

## SINGULAR.

Nom. *Anna* , Anne.  
Gen. *d'Anna* , of Anne.  
Dat. *ad Anna* , to Anne.  
Abl. *da Anna* , from Anne.

*Pro*

*Proper Names of Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, Rivers, and Mountains, are thus declined.*

SINGULAR.

Nom. *la Spagna*, Spain.  
Gen. *della Spagna*, of Spain.  
Dat. *alla Spagna*, to Spain.  
Abl. *dalla Spagna*, from Spain.

SINGULAR.

Nom. *il Piemonte*, Piemont.  
Gen. *del Piemonte*, of Piemont.  
Dat. *al Piemonte*, to Piemont.  
Abl. *dal Piemonte*, from Piemont.

SINGULAR.

Nom. *il Tamigi*, the Thames.  
Gen. *del Tamigi*, of the Thames.  
Dat. *al Tamigi*, to the Thames.  
Abl. *dal Tamigi*, from the Thames.

PLURAL.

Nom. *le Alpi*, the Alps.  
Gen. *delle Alpi*, of the Alps.  
Dat. *alle Alpi*, to the Alps.  
Abl. *dalle Alpi*, from the Alps.

*When these Nouns begin with a Vowel, they are thus declined.*

SINGULAR.

Nom. *l'Inghilterra*, England.  
Gen. *dell'Inghilterra*, of England.  
Dat. *all'Inghilterra*, to England.  
Abl. *dall'Inghilterra*, from England.

SINGULAR.

Nom. *l'Olanda*, Holland.  
Gen. *dell'Olanda*, of Holland.  
Dat. *all'Olanda*, to Holland.  
Abl. *dall'Olanda*, from Holland.

SECT.

## S E C T. IV.

*Of the Comparison of Adjectives.*

Besides the three forementioned Accidents of Nouns, which are common both to Substantives and Adjectives; there is a fourth peculiar to these, called Comparison.

The Comparison of Adjectives is the Way of increasing, or raising their Signification by certain degrees, which are three, *viz.*

1. The POSITIVE.
2. The COMPARATIVE.
3. The SUPERLATIVE.

The Positive lays down the natural Signification of the Adjective; as, *bello*, handsome; *nobile*, noble.

The Comparative raises it to a higher degree, by comparing it to the Positive; which in *Italian*, is performed by the Adverb, *più*, more; ex. *più bello*, handsomer; *più grande*, greater.

There is also another Comparative which lessens the Signification by the Help of the Particles, *meno*, and *sì*; as, *ella è meno bella di voi*, she is less handsome than you; *egli non è sì grande che voi*, he is not so tall as you.

The Superlative raises the Signification as high as possible, which in *Italian* is terminated in *issimo*, M. *issima*, F. as, *bellissimo*, *bellissima*, very handsome; *grandissimo*, *grandissima*, very great.

EXCEP-

# E X C E P T I O N.

*The following Adjectives go from the Rule.*

POSITIVE.		COMPARATIVE.	
M. <i>Buono</i> ,	} Good.	M. <i>Migliore</i> ,	} Better.
F. <i>Buona</i> ,		F. <i>Migliore</i> ,	
M. <i>Cattivo</i> ,	} Bad.	M. <i>Peggior</i> ,	} Worse.
F. <i>Cattiva</i> ,		F. <i>Peggior</i> ,	
M. <i>Piccolo</i> ,	} little.	M. <i>Minore</i> , or <i>più piccolo</i> ,	} less, or
F. <i>Piccola</i> ,		F. <i>Minore</i> , or <i>più piccolo</i> ,	

## SUPERLATIVE.

M. <i>Il Migliore</i> ,	} the best.
F. <i>La Migliore</i> ,	
M. <i>Il più Peggior</i> ,	} the worst.
F. <i>La più Peggior</i> ,	
M. <i>Il Menomo</i> , or <i>il più Piccolo</i> ,	} the least.
F. <i>La Menoma</i> , or <i>la più Piccola</i> .	

## R E M A R K S.

1. Substantives are sometimes improperly compared: ex. *è più Bestia di tutte le Bestie*, he is a greater Brute, than the Brutes themselves.

2. When the Comparison is made between two Substantives, two Adjectives, or two Adverbs, one after another, then the Particle *che* is used in the following Manner; *la Signora ha più Grazia, che Bellezza*, the Lady has more Grace than Beauty; *Lucrezia è più bella, che buona*, Lu-  
cre-

*cretia* is handsomer than good; *è meglio tardi, che mai*, 'tis better late, than never.

3. When Comparifon is made of two Actions; *Beve più, che non mangia*, he drinks more than he eats; *è più bella, che non pensavo*, she is handsomer than I thought; *è meglio morire, che offender Dio*, 'tis better to Die, than to offend God.

4. When the Comparifon is made between two Nouns that are declined with the Article *il*, or *la*, then we use *del*, or *della*, according to their Gender and Number. *Ella è più bella del Sole*, she is handsomer than the Sun; *il Cielo è più grande della Terra*, Heaven is larger than the Earth; *il mio Giardino è più bello del vostro*, my Garden is handsomer than yours; *i suoi Occhi sono più risplendenti delle Stelle*, her Eyes are brighter than the Stars; *l'Oro è più prezioso dell'Argento*, Gold is more pretious than Silver.

5. When the Comparifon is made between two Nouns that are declined with the Article *di*, then we use the same Article for both Genders and Numbers: as, *Antonio è più ricco di Pietro*, Anthony is richer than Peter; *Io so meglio di voi*, I know it better than you; *questo è più grande di quello*, this is larger than that; *la figlia è più saggia di sua Madre*, the Daughter is wiser than her Mother.

The Comparatives *maggiore*, greater; *minore*, lesser; *migliore*, better; *peggiore*, worse; follow the same Rules.

As

As we said before, our Superlatives end in *issimo*, *issima*, &c. as *dottissimo*, *dottissima*, *dottissimi*, *dottissime*: But it is to be observed, that we never say, *il dottissimo di tutti*, the most learned of all; but *il più dotto di tutti*: and the Reason is, that our Superlatives mark an Amplification without Comparifon; and when we exprefs Amplification with a Comparifon, we ufe *più*, more; as in the following Examples. *Pietro è dottissimo nella Medicina*, Peter is very learned in Phyfick; *è la più bella Donna di quante n' abbia mai vedute*, she is the handsomeft Woman I ever faw.

## S E C T. V.

*Of the Figure and Species of Nouns.*

Befides the four principal Accidents of Nouns already mentioned, their Figure and Species are alfo to be confidered.

The Figure of Nouns is that Accident which fhews whether they be Simple; as, *giufto*, juft; or Compound; as, *ingiufto*, unjuft.

The Species is an Accident of Nouns, whereby we know whether they be Primitive; fuch as, *Mondo*, the World; *buono*, good: or Derivative; as, *mondano*, worldly; *Bontà*, Goodnefs.

There are feveral Sorts of Primitive Nouns, of which the following are the Chief.

## 1. The

1. The Noun Collective, which in the singular Number signifies a Multitude; as, *la Corte*, the Court; *il Senato*, the Senate; *un' Esercito*, an Army; *una Dozzina*, a Dozen.

2. The Distributive, which is the contrary of the Collective, and divides a Multitude; as, *ogni* every; *due a due*, two and two.

3. The Equivocal Nouns, which have a double Meaning; as, *Tema*, a Theme; *Tema*, Fear.

4. Synonyma's, two or three of which signify almost the same Thing; as, *breve*, *corto*, short; *forte*, *gagliardo*, *robusto*, strong, lusty, robust; *Via*, *Cammino*, Way, Road.

5. Nouns Numeral, which serve to distinguish the Numbers, and are either Cardinal, or Ordinal.

The Cardinal Number is the Fountain of the others, and expresses, or joins Units together; as, *Uno*, *Due*, *Tre*, *Quattro*, &c. One, Two, Three, Four, &c.

The Ordinal Number derives from the Cardinal, and shews the Order and Rank of every Thing; as, *Primo*, *Secondo*, *Terzo*, &c. First, Second, Third, &c.

The Principal Derivative Nouns are the following.

1. The Verbal, which comes from a Verb; as, *Amore*, Love, from *Amare*; *Parliero*, Talker, from *Parlare*.

2. The

2. The Diminutive, which decreases or diminishes the Signification of its Primitive; as, *Bastoncino*, a little Stick; *Figliolino*, a little Boy; from *Bastone*, and *Figliuolo*.

3. The Augmentative, which augments or increases the Signification of its Primitive; as, *Cappellone*, a large Hat; *Casone*, a large House; from *Cappello*, and *Casa*.

4. The Name of one's Nation; as, *Italiano*, an Italian; *Inglese*, English.

5. The Name of one's Province; as, *Toscana*, Tuscan; *Piemontese*, Piemontese; *Gallese*, Welsh.

6. The Name of one's Town or City; as, *Fiorentino*, a Florentine; *Romano*, a Roman.

7. The Nick-names given either out of Spite or Derision; as, *Ugonotto*, a Hugonot; *Papista*, a Papist.

# C H A P. IV.

## *Of the Pronouns.*

THE Pronoun is a Part of Speech, so called, because it is often used instead of a Noun, to avoid the too frequent Repetition thereof, which would be troublesome and unpleasant,  
Ex.

Ex. *Io amo Pietro, perch'egli è mio amico*; I love *Peter*, because he is my Friend; which is as much as to say, ( suppose there were no Pronouns ) *Io amo Pietro, perche Pietro è mio amico*, I love *Peter*, because *Peter* is my Friend.

*Pronouns have six Accidents, viz.*

- |                             |                 |
|-----------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. The Gender.              | 4. The Person.  |
| 2. The Number.              | 5. The Figure.  |
| 3. The Case, or Declension. | 6. The Species. |

1, 2. The two first are the same as in the Noun.

3. The Case and Declension of Pronouns are also the same as in Nouns; with this only Difference, that some Pronouns have an accusative Case.

4. There are three Persons both in the Singular and Plural.

The first is that which speaks; as, *Io vi vedo*, I see you; *noi vi amiamo*, we love you.

The second is that which one speaks to; as, *tu sei ricco*, thou art rich; *voi siete bello*, you are handsome.

The third is that which one speaks of; as, *egli è dotto*, he is learned; *ella è amabile*, she is lovely; *eglino cantano*, they sing; *elleno ballano*, they dance.

*Note,*

*Note*, that except these Pronouns, *io, noi, tu, voi*, all the others are of the third Person.

5. The Figure of Pronouns are twofold; *viz.* Simple; as, *io, lui, ella, noi*, I or me, he, she, we; and Compound; as, *io stesso*, my self; *lui stesso*, himself; *ella stessa*, herself, &c.

6. The Species of Pronouns is also twofold; *viz.* Primitive; as, *io, tu*, &c. I, thou, &c. And Derivative; as, *mio, tuo*, &c. mine, thine, &c.

*Pronouns are also divided according to their Signification, into seven Sorts, viz.*

- |                   |                   |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. Personal.      | 5. Interrogative. |
| 2. Possessive.    | 6. Numeral.       |
| 3. Demonstrative. | 7. Indefinite.    |
| 4. Relative.      |                   |

# S E C T. I.

## *Of the Pronouns Personal.*

Pronouns Personal are five; *viz. io, tu, egli, ella, se*, they are declined with the Article *di, a, da*.

*Io, I, is of the common Gender, and is thus declined.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. <i>Io</i> , I.	Nom. <i>Noi</i> , we.
Gen. <i>Di me</i> , or <i>mi</i> , of me.	Gen. <i>Di noi</i> , of us.
Dat. <i>A me</i> , to me.	Dat. <i>A noi</i> , or <i>ci, ce, ne</i> , to us.
Acc. <i>Me</i> , or <i>mi</i> , me.	Acc. <i>Noi</i> , or <i>ci, ce, ne</i> , us.
Abl. <i>Da me</i> , from me.	Abl. <i>Da noi</i> , from us.
	<i>e Decli-</i>

*Declination of tu, also of the common Gender.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. <i>Tu</i> , thou.	Nom. <i>Voi</i> , you or ye.
Gen. <i>Di te</i> , of thee.	Gen. <i>Di voi</i> , of you.
Dat. <i>A te</i> , or <i>ti</i> , to thee.	Dat. <i>A voi</i> , or <i>vi</i> , <i>ve</i> , to you.
Acc. <i>Te</i> , or <i>ti</i> , thee.	Acc. <i>Voi</i> , or <i>vi</i> , <i>ve</i> , you.
Abl. <i>Da te</i> , from thee.	Abl. <i>Da voi</i> , from you.

*Egli, or, Eſſo, is of the masculine Gender.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. <i>Egli</i> , or <i>eſſo</i> , he.	Nom. <i>Eglino</i> , they.
Gen. <i>Di lui</i> , of him.	Gen. <i>Di loro</i> , of them.
Dat. <i>A lui</i> , or <i>li</i> , to him.	Dat. <i>A loro</i> , or <i>loro</i> , to them.
Acc. <i>Lui</i> , or <i>lo</i> , him.	Acc. <i>Loro</i> , or <i>gli</i> , <i>li</i> , them.
Abl. <i>Dalui</i> , from him.	Abl. <i>Daloro</i> , from them.

*Ella, or eſſa, expreſſes the feminine Gender.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. <i>Ella</i> , or <i>eſſa</i> , she.	Nom. <i>Elleno</i> , or <i>eſſe</i> , they.
Gen. <i>Dilei</i> , of her.	Gen. <i>Di loro</i> , of them.
Dat. <i>A lei</i> , or <i>le</i> , to her.	Dat. <i>A loro</i> , or <i>loro</i> , to them.
Acc. <i>Lei</i> , or <i>la</i> , her.	Acc. <i>Loro</i> , or <i>le</i> , them.
Abl. <i>Da lei</i> , from her.	Abl. <i>Daloro</i> , from them.

Se,

*Se*, one's self, is a reciprocal Pronoun of the third Person, of the common Gender, and of both Numbers, but without a nominative Case.

*Singular and Plural.*

Nom.

Gen. *Di se*, of one's self, himself, herself.

Dat. *A se*, or *si*, to one's self, &c.

Acc. *Se*, or *si*, one's self, &c.

Abl. *Da se*, from one's self, &c.

Remarks upon *io*, me, *mi*, noi, ce, ci, ne.

We often find instead of *Io*, *I* with the Apostrophe.

*I mi vivea di mia Sorte contento.*

I lived satisfied with my Destiny.

*Io* repeated, gives the Discourse more Force or more Grace; ex. *fate pur ben voi, ch'io farò ben'io s'io potrò*, do your own Business, I will do mine if I can.

*Qual Donna canterà, se non cant'io?*

Who is the Woman that will sing, if I do not sing?

*Different Uses of me, mi.*

*Me*, *mi*, that are of the Oblique Cases of *io*, have the same Signification; but they are differently used.

1. *Me* serves for all the Cases, after the Particles, *di*, *a*, *da*; ex. *di me*, of me; *a me*, to me; *da me*, from me.

c 2

2. After

2. After all the Prepositions; ex. *per me*, for me; *verso me*, towards me; *contro me*, against me.

3. Before, or after some Interjections; ex. *lasso me*, alafs! *felice me*, or *me felice*, how happy I am.

4. Before *lo*, *la*, *le*, *gli*; as, *melo*, *mela*, *mele*, *megli*; ex. *ditemelo*, tell it me; *datemela*, give it me.

5. Before the Particle Relative *ne*; ex. *me ne pento*, I repent of it; *datemene*, give me some of it.

*Note*, that when we make an Opposition, we use *me*, without joining it to the Verb; which is very graceful in our Language; as it may be seen in the following Example:

*Ferir me di saetta in quello stato,*

*E a voi armata non mostrar pur l'arco.* Petr.

*Mi*, serves only for the Dative and the Accusative, and it is placed either before or after the Verb; as, *mi vide*, he saw me; *fatemi questo favore*, do me this favour.

*Mi* is also put before the Monosyllables *ci*, *si*, *vi*, *ne*; as, *continua Concordia mi ci è paruta di vedere*, I thought I saw there a perpetual Concord; *mi si fece incontro*, he met me; *ma io mi ti voglio un poco scusare*, but I will excuse my self a little to you; *come a Padre mi vi scuso*, I excuse my self to you, as I would to my Father; *io mi ve ne dolsi*, I grieved at it.

*Mi*

*Mi* is often put before the Verb, as an Expletive Particle; as, *io mi morrò*, I shall die.

*Different ways of using ce, ci, ne.*

Although I have said that the Pronoun *io*, I, makes *noi*, in the Plural; yet it is to be observed, that we use very often *ce, ci, ne*, for the Dative and Accusative Cases; with this Difference, that we put *ce*, before the Particles *lo, la, ne*; as, *ce lo mostrò*, he shewed it to us; *ce la diede*, he gave it us; *che non ce ne andiamo noi?* Why do not we go? And *ci*, is put before or after the Verb; as, *ci fece molti Regali*, he made us a great many Presents; *se n' andò senza dir-ci addio*, he went away without bidding us Farewell.

*Ci*, either Pronoun or Adverb, being joined to the Monosyllables, *mi, si, ti, vi*, is put before *si*, but with the others, it is put after: I will explain my self better by the following Examples.

*Dì e Notte ci si lavora*, they work there Night and Day; *mi ci hanno fatto entrar per inganno*, they made me go in there by Treachery; *il Diavolo ti ci reca*, the Devil brings you to us; *dirà, che io vi ci abbia fatta venir per danari*, he will say, that I made you come to us for Money.

*Ne* for *noi*, for the Dative or the Accusative, is put either before, or after the Verb; *perchè crudo Destino ne disunisci tu, s' amor ne stringe?* thou cruel Destiny, why do you part us, if

Love joins us? *Honne vedute cento come voi*, I have seen a hundred like you.

*Remarks upon tu, te, ti.*

*Tu* often serves for an Ornament, as a Particle expletive; as, *tu ti se' ben vendicato*, thou hast revenged thy self well.

'Tis now out of Use to join *tu* at the End of the Verb; as, *mandastu, avestù, fostu*, instead of *mandasti tu, avessi tu, fossi tu*.

When *tu* is followed by the Article *il*, we write *tu'l*, and not *tu il*; as, *Signor, tu'l puoi saper*, Sir, you may know it.

*Te, ti*, follow the same Rules; as, *me, mi; te* is put after the Particles, *di, a, da*; as, *di te*, of thee; *a te*, to thee; *da te*, from thee. Also, Before *la, le, lo, gli; tela, tele, telo, tegli*; as, *tela manderò*, I will send it thee, &c. Likewise, before *ne*; *tene ringrazio*, I thank thee for it. After some Interjections; as, *lasso te*, woe to thee. After the Verb *essere*, to be, we put *te*; but this Way of Speaking is rather *Latin*, than *Tuscan*; as *credendo ch'io fossi te*, thinking that I was thee.

When *te* is followed by *il*, we write *te'l*, and not *te il*; as, *io non te'l potei dire allor, nè volli*, I could, nor would not tell it you then.

*Ti* is put before and after the Verb; as, *ti vergogni di dirlo, e non avresti vergogna di riceverlo*, thou art ashamed to speak it, and thou wouldst not

not be ashamed to take it; *per dirti la cagion del mio venir a te sì ratto*, to tell thee the Reason of my coming in such a Hastē.

*Ti* is put before *se*, and after *vi*; as, *questo chi che ti se l'abbia detto, io no'l nego*, whoever has told thee so, I cannot deny it; *vi ti porrò una Coltricetta, e dormiviti*, I will put there a little Counterpoint for thee, and sleep upon it.

*Remarks upon voi, vi, ve.*

Although *voi* is the Plural of *tu*, 'tis used for a single Person, which is used also in *English*; as, *voi sete molto ardito*, you are very bold.

*Ve*, follows the same Rules; as, *me, te*; that is to say, that *ve* is put before *la, le, lo, li, ne*; as, *vela do volentieri*, I give it thee willingly, &c.

But if the Pronoun is put after the Particle, you must say *vi*, and not *ve*; *le vi recò*, he brought them to you; *io gli vi donerò*, I will give them to you.

*Vi* is placed before or after the Verbs; as, *questo vi dico per l'ultima volta*, I tell you this for the last Time; *a dirvi il vero, voi sete troppo importuno*, to tell you the Truth, you are too troublesome.

*Vi* is put before *ci, si, ti*; as, *io non so come vi ci possiamo pervenire*, I do not know how we shall come there; *vi si accordò*, he agreed to it;

*vi ti menerò*, I will carry you thither. But in all these Examples, the Particle *vi* is an Adverb, and not a Pronoun.

*Remarks upon lui and lei, with the Particle come.*

We use *lui*, and *lei*, with the Particle *come*, when Comparison or Equality is signified; as, *costoro ch' erano maliziosi come lui*, they who were as malicious as he: But if the Word *come* expresses Similitude, and not Equality, *egli* and *ella* must be used; as, *che direste voi, s'io fossi nella Via come egli*, or *ella*? What would you say if I were in the Way as well as he or she?

*Remarks upon egli, ella, lui, and lei, with the Gerund.*

When any of these Pronouns is accompanied by a *Gerund*, independently of the Verb that follows, then *lui*, and *lei* must be used; ex. *Dormendo lui, io cantava*, whilst he slept, I sung; one may see by this Example, that *lui* has no Reference to the Verb *cantava*. On the contrary, one must say *egli*, and *ella*, if the Verb that follows depends upon these Pronouns; as, *scrivendo egli s'ingegnò di mostrare la Verità del Fatto*, by Writing he strove to show the Truth of the Matter; *filando ella a poco a poco s'addormentò*, as she was spinning she fell asleep.

Re-

*Remarks upon esso, essa, desso, deffa.*

The Pronoun *esso*, is almost indeclineable and is used as a Particle Expletive before the Pronouns *lui, lei, loro, noi, voi, Mano, Piedi*; as, *con esso lui*, with him; *con essa lei*, with her; *con esso loro*, with them; *cominciàro a cantare, e le Valli con esso loro*, they began to sing, and the Vallies with them; *con esso le Mani*, with the Hands; *con esso i Piedi*, with the Feet.

*Desso*, and *deffa*, have the same Signification as, *esso*, and *essa*; but they have a Signification more energetick in expressing the Person or the Thing we speak of; as, *egli è desso*, he is the very Man, *tu non mi par deffa*, I do not think you are the same Woman.

## S E C T. II.

### *Of the Pronouns Possessive.*

Pronouns Possessive, are so called, because they signify the Possession or Appurtenance of a Thing; and they are declined by the Article *il, del, al, dal*, for the Masculine, and *la, della, alla, dalla*, for the Feminine.

There are Twelve Pronouns Possessive in Italian; viz. *il mio, il tuo, il suo, il nostro, il vostro, il loro; la mia, la tua, la sua, la nostra, la vostra, la loro*.

EXAM-

## EXAMPLES.

## SINGULAR Masc.

Nom. *Il mio*, my, or mine.Gen. *Del mio*, of my, or mine.Dat. *Al mio*, to my, or mine.Acc. *Il mio*, my, or mine.Abl. *Dal mio*, from my, or mine.

## PLURAL Masc.

Nom. *I miei*, my or mine,Gen. *De' miei*, of my, or mine.Dat. *A' miei*, to my, or mine.Acc. *I miei*, my, or mine.Abl. *Da' miei*, from my, or mine.

## SINGULAR Fem.

Nom. *La mia*, my, or mine.Gen. *Della mia*, of my, or mine.Dat. *Alla mia*, to my, or mine.Acc. *La mia*, my, or mine.Abl. *Dalla mia*, from my, or mine.

## PLURAL Fem.

Nom. *Le mie*, my, or mine.Gen. *Delle mie*, of my, or mine.Dat. *Alle mie*, to my, or mine.Acc. *Le mie*, my, or mine.Abl. *Dalle mie*, from my, or mine.

## SINGULAR Masc.

Nom. *Il tuo*, thy, or thine.Gen. *Del tuo*, of thy, or thine.Dat. *Al tuo*, to thy, or thine.Acc. *Il tuo*, thy, or thine.Abl. *Dal tua*, from thy, or thine.

## PLURAL Masc.

Nom. *I tuoi*, thy, or thine.Gen. *De' tuoi*, of thy, or thine.Dat. *A' tuoi*, to thy, or thine.Acc. *I tuoi*, thy, or thine.Abl. *Da' tuoi*, from thy, or thine.

SIN-

SINGULAR Fem.

Nom. *Latua*, thy, or thine.

Gen. *Della tua*, of thy, or thine.

Dat. *Alla tua*, to thy, or thine.

Acc. *Latua*, thy, or thine.

Abl. *Dalla tua*, from thy, or thine,

PLURAL Fem.

Nom. *Le tue*, thy, or thine.

Gen. *Delle tue*, of thy, or thine.

Dat. *Alle tue*, to thy, or thine.

Acc. *Le tue*, thy, or thine.

Abl. *Dalle tue*, from thy, or thine.

SINGULAR Masc.

Nom. *Il suo*, his, or hers.

Gen. *Del suo*, of his, or hers.

Dat. *Al suo*, to his, or hers.

Acc. *Il suo*, his, or hers.

Abl. *Dal suo* from his, or hers.

PLURAL Masc.

Nom. *I suoi*, his, or hers.

Gen. *De' suoi*, of his, or hers.

Dat. *A' suoi*, to his, or hers.

Acc. *I suoi*, his, or hers.

Abl. *Da' suoi*, from his, or hers.

SINGULAR Fem.

Nom. *La sua*, his, or hers.

Gen. *Della sua*, of his, or hers.

Dat. *Alla sua*, to his, or hers.

Acc. *La sua*, his, or hers.

Abl. *Dalla sua*, from his, or hers.

PLURAL Fem.

Nom. *Le sue*, his, or hers.

Gen. *Delle sue*, of his, or hers.

Dat. *Alle sue*, to his, or hers.

Acc. *Le sue*, his, or hers.

Abl. *Dalle sue*, from his, or hers.

SIN-

## SING. Masc.

Nom. *Il nostro*, our, or ours.  
 Gen. *Del nostro*, of our, or ours.  
 Dat. *Al nostro*, to our, or ours.  
 Acc. *Il nostro*, our, or ours.  
 Abl. *Dal nostro*, from our, or ours.

## SING. Fem.

Nom. *La nostra*, our, or ours.  
 Gen. *Della nostra*, of our, or ours.  
 Dat. *Alla nostra*, to our, or ours.  
 Acc. *La nostra*, our, or ours.  
 Abl. *Dalla nostra*, from our, or ours.

## SING. Masc.

Nom. *Il vostro*, your, or yours.  
 Gen. *Del vostro*, of your, or yours.  
 Dat. *Al vostro*, to your, or yours.  
 Acc. *Il vostro*, your, or yours.  
 Abl. *Dal vostro*, from your, or yours.

## PLUR. Masc.

Nom. *I nostri*, our, or ours.  
 Gen. *De' nostri*, of our, or ours.  
 Dat. *A' nostri*, to our, or ours.  
 Acc. *I nostri*, our, or ours.  
 Abl. *Da' nostri*, from our, or ours.

## PLUR. Fem.

Nom. *Le nostre*, our, or ours.  
 Gen. *Delle nostre*, of our, or ours.  
 Dat. *Alle nostre*, to our, or ours.  
 Acc. *Le nostre*, our, or ours.  
 Abl. *Dalle nostre*, from our, or ours.

## PLUR. Masc.

Nom. *I vostri*, your, or yours.  
 Gen. *De' vostri*, of your, or yours.  
 Dat. *A' vostri*, to your, or yours.  
 Acc. *I vostri*, your, or yours.  
 Abl. *Da' vostri*, from your, or yours.

SIN-

SING. Fem.

Nom. *La vostra*, your, or yours.

Gen. *Della vostra*, of your, or yours.

Dat. *Alla vostra*, to your, or yours.

Acc. *La vostra*, your, or yours.

Abl. *Dalla vostra*, from your, or yours.

PLUR. Fem.

Nom. *Le vostre*, your, or yours.

Gen. *Delle vostre*, of your, or yours.

Dat. *Alle vostre*, to your, or yours.

Acc. *Le vostre*, your, or yours.

Abl. *Dalle vostre*, from your, or yours.

*Loro, their, is of the common Gender.*

SING. Masc.

Nom. *Il loro*, their, or theirs.

Gen. *Del loro*, of their, or theirs.

Dat. *Al loro*, to their, or theirs.

Acc. *Il loro*, their, or theirs.

Abl. *Dal loro*, from their, or theirs.

PLUR. Masc.

Nom. *I loro*, their, or theirs.

Gen. *De' loro*, of their, or theirs.

Dat. *A' loro*, to their, or theirs.

Acc. *I loro*, their, or theirs.

Abl. *Da' loro*, from their, or theirs.

SING. Fem.

Nom. *La loro*, their, or theirs.

Gen. *Della loro*, of their, or theirs.

Dat. *Alla loro*, to their, or theirs.

Acc. *La loro*, their, or theirs.

Abl. *Dalla loro*, from their, or theirs.

PLUR. Fem.

Nom. *Le loro*, their, or theirs.

Gen. *Delle loro*, of their, or theirs.

Dat. *Alle loro*, to their, or theirs.

Acc. *Le loro*, their, or theirs.

Abl. *Dalle loro*, from their, or theirs.

By

By the foregoing Examples , it plainly appears, that the *Italian* Tongue has but one Kind of Pronouns Possessive, to answer the double Pronouns in *English* ; my , and mine ; thy , and thine ; our , our , or ours , &c. We say then, *Questo Libro è mio* , this is my Book , whether *mio* be accompanied with a Noun , or be a Relative ; whereas , the *English* say , this Book is mine , or this is my Book .

*Note*, also, that these Pronouns may be put either before or after the Noun ; but in *English* , must always go before ; so we say , *i miei Libri* , and *i Libri miei* , my Books .

Although I have said before , that the Pronouns Possessive are declined by the Article *il* , *del* , &c. yet you must observe , that if these Pronouns are joined to a Noun of Quality , or Kindred , then they are declined by the Article *di* , *a* , *da* ; as , *sua Maestà* , his Majesty ; *di sua Maestà* , of his Majesty ; *a sua Maestà* , to his Majesty ; *da sua Maestà* , from his Majesty : *Mio Padre* , my Father ; *di mio Padre* , of my Father ; *a mio Padre* , to my Father ; *da mio Padre* , from my Father ; *mia Madre* , my Mother ; *di mia Madre* , of my Mother , &c. But in the Plural , we use the Article *i* , *de'* , *le* , *delle* , &c. *i miei Fratelli* , my Brothers ; *de' miei Fratelli* , of my Brothers , &c. *le mie Sorelle* , my Sisters ; *delle mie Sorelle* , of my Sisters , &c.

*Note* ,

*Note*, that *loro*, after a Verb is a Pronoun Personal; as, *io dissi loro*, I told them; and after a Noun is a Pronoun Possessive; *i Beni loro*, their Estate.

### S E C T. III.

#### *Of the Pronouns Demonstrative.*

Pronouns Demonstrative serve to shew a Person or a Thing. We have in *Italian* but two Sorts; some to shew a Person or Thing that is near us, and others to shew a Person or Thing at some Distance. These Pronouns are declined with the Article *di*, *a*, *da*.

**SINGULAR Masc.**  
 Nom. *Questo*, this.  
 Gen. *Di questo*, of this.  
 Dat. *A questo*, to this.  
 Acc. *Questo*, this.  
 Abl. *Da questo*, from this.

**PLURAL Masc.**  
 Nom. *Questi*, these.  
 Gen. *Di questi*, of these.  
 Dat. *A questi*, to these.  
 Acc. *Questi*, these.  
 Abl. *Da questi*, from these.

**SINGULAR Fem.**  
 Nom. *Questa*, this.  
 Gen. *Di questa*, of this.  
 Dat. *A questa*, to this.  
 Acc. *Questa*, this.  
 Abl. *Da questa*, from this.

**PLURAL Fem.**  
 Nom. *Queste*, these.  
 Gen. *Di queste*, of these.  
 Dat. *A queste*, to these.  
 Acc. *Queste*, these.  
 Abl. *Da queste*, from these.

Co

*Cotesto*, he, or this; *cotesta*, she, or this; *cotesti*, *coteste*, they or those, are declined like, *questo*, and *questa*.

SING. Masc.	PLUR. Masc.
Nom. <i>Quello</i> , that.	Nom. <i>Quei</i> , or <i>quelli</i> , those.
Gen. <i>Di quello</i> , of that.	Gen. <i>Di quei</i> , or <i>quelli</i> , of those.
Dat. <i>A quello</i> , to that.	Dat. <i>A quei</i> , or <i>quelli</i> , to those.
Acc. <i>Quello</i> , that.	Acc. <i>Quei</i> , or <i>quelli</i> , those.
Abl. <i>Da quello</i> , from that.	Abl. <i>Da quei</i> , or <i>quelli</i> , from those.
SING. Fem.	PLUR. Fem.
Nom. <i>Quella</i> , that.	Nom. <i>Quelle</i> , those.
Gen. <i>Di quella</i> , of that.	Gen. <i>Di quelle</i> , of those.
Dat. <i>A quella</i> , to that.	Dat. <i>A quelle</i> , to those.
Acc. <i>Quella</i> , that.	Acc. <i>Quelle</i> , those.
Abl. <i>Da quella</i> , from that.	Abl. <i>Da quelle</i> , from those.

SING. Masc.  
 Nom. *Costui*, he, or this Man.  
 Gen. *Di costui*, of him, or this Man.  
 Dat. *A costui*, to him, or this Man.  
 Acc. *Costui*, him, or this Man.  
 Abl. *Da costui*, from him, or this Man.

SIN-

SINGULAR Fem.

- Nom. *Costei*, she, or this Woman.  
 Gen. *Di costei*, of her, or of this Woman.  
 Dat. *A costei*, to her, or to this Woman.  
 Acc. *Costei*, her, or to this Woman.  
 Abl. *Da costei*, from her, or from this Woman.

PLURAL Masc. Fem.

- Nom. *Costoro*, they, or these Men and Women.  
 Gen. *Di costoro*, of them, &c.  
 Dat. *A costora*, to them, &c.  
 Acc. *Costoro*, them, &c.  
 Abl. *Da costoro*, from them, &c.

*Costestui*, he or this Man; *cotestei*, she, or this Woman, are declined like *costui*, and *costei*.

SINGULAR Masc.

- Nom. *colui*, he, or that Man.  
 Gen. *Di colui*, of him, or of that Man.  
 Dat. *A colui*, to him, or to that Man.  
 Acc. *colui*, him, or that Man.  
 Abl. *Da colui*, from him, or from that Man.

SINGULAR Fem.

- Nom. *Colei*, she, or that Woman.  
 Gen. *Di colei*, of her, or of that Woman.  
 Dat. *A colei*, to her, or to that Woman.  
 Acc. *Colei*, her, or that Woman.  
 Abl. *Da colei*, from her, or from that Woman.

f

PLURAL

## PLURAL Masc. and Fem.

Nom. *Coloro*, they, or those Men or Women.Gen. *Di coloro*, of them, &c.Dat. *A coloro*, to them, &c.Acc. *Coloro*, them, &c.Abl. *Da coloro*, from them, &c.

## SINGULAR.

Nom. *Cid*, this, or that.Gen. *Di cid*, of this, or that.Dat. *A cid*, to this, or that.Acc. *Cid*, this, or that.Abl. *Da cid*, from this, or that.*Remarks upon the Pronouns Demonstrative.*

One ought to say *questi*, and never *questo*, when this Pronoun is used alone for this Man; as, *questi vorrebbe persuadermi, che, &c.* this Man would persuade me, that, &c.

If *questo* is used alone, and without any Substantive, it signifies this or that; as, *questo vi dico per l'ultima volta*, I tell you this for the last Time; *questo mi piace*, I like this.

When it is joined with a Substantive, it agrees with it in Gender, Number, and Case; as, *questo Vizio*, this Vice; *questa Virtù*, this Virtue; *questi Doni*, these Gifts; *queste Parole*, these Words.

There is always some Difference between *questo*, and *cotesto*, *questa* and *cotesta*; for *questo* is used

used by him that speaks to another ; as, *vi ho partecipato questo mio pensiero, perchè sò che sete mio Amico* , I have imparted this Resolution of mine to you , knowing you to be my Friend ; and *cotesto* is used by the Person that is spoken to ; as, *cotesto vostro pensiero mi piace* , I approve of this your Resolution.

Before *Mane* , or *Mattina* , *Sera* , *Notte* , we put *sta* instead of *questa* ; as, *Stamane* , or *Stamattina* , this Morning ; *Stasera* , or *Stanotte* , this Night . But before all other Words we always say *questa* .

*Note* , that we make Use of *questo* and *questa* , when the Thing spoken of is near ; and of *quello* and *quella* , when the Thing spoken of is more remote .

*Costui* , and *cotestui* , *coſtei* , and *coteſtei* , have almost the same Signification ; the only Difference , is , that *cotestui* and *coteſtei* serve to show a Thing near , and *costui* and *coſtei* , a Thing more distant .

*Note* , also , that these Pronouns are always relative to a Substantive animate .

The Pronoun *ciò* , is indeclinable , and signifies *questo* , this or that , and is always Relative to a Substantive inanimate : as ,

*Nè di ciò lei, ma mia Ventura incolpo* , nor do I lay the Fault of that on her , but on my bad Fate . Upon some Occasions *ciò* has been used as Relative to an animate Thing ; as , *la quale io credei incontanente, ch'ella fosse ciò ch'ella era* , whom I soon knew to be what I thought she was ; *Ric. Minut.*

## S E C T. IV.

*Of the Pronouns Relative.*

Pronouns Relative, are those which show the Relation, or Reference, which a Noun has to what follows it.

Most Pronouns in *Italian* have sometimes a Relative Signification; but the chiefest and properly so called Relative, are *che*, and *quale*.

*Note*, that *che* has two Significations, of the Thing, and of the Person. When it is Relative to a Thing, 'tis common to all Numbers, Genders, and Cases; as, *il Libro, che*, the Book, which; *la Lettera, che*, the Letter, which; *i Libri, che*, the Books, which; *le Lettere, che*, the Letters, which; and it is declined thus.

## SINGULAR and PLURAL.

Nom. *Che*, which.

Gen. *Di che*, of which.

Dat. *A che*, to which.

Acc. *Che*, which.

Abl. *Da che*, from which.

*Che*, when it is relative to a Person, and signifies who, is either Masculine or Feminine, and serves for both the Numbers, Singular and Plural; but 'tis used only in the Nominative Case of both Numbers; and for the other Cases we say *cui*; and 'tis declined thus;

S I N-

SINGULAR and PLURAL.

Nom. *Che*, who.

Gen. *Di cui*, of whom, or whose.

Dat. *A cui*, or *cui*, to whom.

Acc. *Che*, or *cui*, whom.

Abl. *Da cui*, from whom.

*Quale*, when it is taken relatively, requires the Article *il*, or *la*; as, *Pietro, il quale*; *Peter, who*; *la Doglia, la quale*; the Grief, which; it is declined thus;

SINGULAR Masc.

Nom. *il quale*, who, or which.

Gen. *del quale*, of whom, or which.

Dat. *al quale*, to whom, or which.

Acc. *il quale*, whom, or which.

Abl. *dal quale*, from whom, or which.

PLURAL Masc.

Nom. *i quali*, who, or which.

Gen. *de' quali*, of whom, or which.

Dat. *a' quali*, to whom, or which.

Acc. *i quali*, whom, or which.

Abl. *da' quali*, from whom, or which.

SINGULAR Fem.

Nom. *la quale*, who, or which.

Gen. *della quale*, of whom, or which.

Dat. *alla quale*, to whom, or which.

Acc. *la quale*, whom, or which.

Ablat. *dalla quale*, from whom, or which.

PLURAL Fem.

Nom. *le quali*, who, or which.

Gen. *delle quali*, of whom, or which.

Dat. *alle quali*, to whom, or which.

Acc. *le quali*, whom, or which.

Ablat. *dalle quali*, from whom, or which.

f 3

When

When *quale* denotes Quality, it is used without the Article; as, *se tu sapessi, qual' è 'l dolor ch' io sento*, if you knew what Grief I feel.

S E C T. V.

*Of the Pronouns Interrogative.*

Pronouns Interrogative, are those that are used in asking a Question, and are only three, viz. *chi?* who? *quale?* which? *che?* what?

SING. and PLUR. Masc. and Fem.	SING. and PLUR. Masc. and Fem.
Nom. <i>Chi?</i> who, whom?	Nom. <i>Che?</i> what?
Gen. <i>Di chi?</i> of whom?	Gen. <i>Di che?</i> of what?
Dat. <i>A chi?</i> to whom?	Dat. <i>A che?</i> to what?
Acc. <i>Chi?</i> whom?	Acc. <i>Che?</i> what?
Abl. <i>Da chi?</i> from whom?	Abl. <i>Da che?</i> from what?
SINGULAR Masc. and Fem.	PLURAL Masc. and Fem.
Nom. <i>Quale?</i> which, or what?	Nom. <i>Quali, qua' or quai?</i> which, or what?
Gen. <i>Di quale?</i> of which, or what?	Gen. <i>Di quali</i> , &c. of which, or what?
Dat. <i>A quale?</i> to which, or what?	Dat. <i>A quali?</i> to which, or what?
Acc. <i>Quale?</i> which, or what?	Acc. <i>Quali?</i> which, or what?
Abl. <i>Da quale?</i> from which, or what?	Abl. <i>Da quali?</i> from which, or what?
	SECT.

S E C T. VI.

*Of the Pronouns Numeral.*

Numeral Pronouns serve to express the Number and Quantity, and are these following;

*Ogni*, every.

*Ognuno*, *Ognuna*,

*Ciascuno*, or *Ciascheduno*,

*Ciascuna*, or *Ciascheduna*,

*Niuno*, or *Nessuno*,

*Veruno*, *Veruna*,

*Tutto*, *tutta*, all.

*Molti*, *molte*, several, many.

*Pochi*, *pochi*, few.

} every one.

} no Body.

These Pronouns are declined with the Article *di, a, da*; *Ogni*, is declinable, and 'tis only used in the Singular; and *molti* and *molte* have no Singular.

S E C T. VII.

*Of the Pronouns Indefinite.*

Indefinite Pronouns signify a Person or Thing in a general, and unlimited Sense; and are the following.

*Uno*, *una*, one.

*Gli uni*, some.

*Altro*, *altra*, other.

f 4

*L'Al-*

*L' Altro, l' altra*, the other.

*Altrui*, others.

*Alcuno*, } some Body.

*Qualcuno*, }

*Chiunque*, } whosoever.

*Qualunque*, }

*Qualche*, } some.

*Qualcuno*, }

*Qualunque*, whatsoever.

*Certo, certa*, certain.

*Stesso, stessa*, self-same.

*Tale*, such.

All these Pronouns are declined with the Article *di, a, da*; except *l' uno, l' una, l' altro, l' altra*; and these two *certo, tale*, which are declined either with the Article *un*, or the Particles *di, a, da*.

#### R E M A R K S.

*Uno*, one, when it stands for a Pronoun, needs not a Substantive to accompany it; as, *non ne passa per via uno, che a me non dispiaccia come la mala Ventura*, there is not one passes by, but what displeases me, as some unlucky Thing.

*Uno* being used as a Numeral, has no Plural; but distributively taken, it assumes the Plural; as, *gli uni, e gli altri tementi Annibale*, the one and the other being afraid of Hannibal.

*Uno* accompanied with *tutto*, has a neutral Signification; as, *Cortesia ed Onestà è tutt' uno*, Civility and Honesty are the same Thing.

From

From *uno* are formed, *Alcuno*, some Body; *Ciascuno*, and *Ciascheduno*, every one; *nessuno* and *niuno*, no Body; *Qualcuno*, some Body; *Veruno*, no Body.

*Altro*, by it self, without being accompanied with a Substantive, signifies, one, or another Thing; as, *altro è parlar di Morte*, *altro è morire*, it is one Thing to talk of Death, and another to Die; *vuoi altro?* do you want any Thing else.

From *altro*, are formed several Expressions; as *tu non sei da altro*, you are good for nothing else; *per altro*, however.

*Altro* being a Pronoun adjective, is declined, *altro*, *altra*, *altri*, *altre*.

*Altri*, Being a Noun Substantive, signifies another Man; and makes *altrui* for the Oblique Cases; thus,

Nom. *Altri*, another.

Gen. *Altrui*, or *d'altrui*, of another.

Dat. *Altrui*, or *ad altrui*, to another.

Acc. *Altrui*, another.

Abl. *D'altrui*, from another.

*Lasso! ch'io ardo, ed altri non me'l crede*, alas! I burn, and no Body believes me.

*Tal biasma altrui, che se stesso condanna*, some by blaming others, condemn themselves.

But *altri* being in the plural Number, is not declined; as, *facciano prima essi, e poi ammaestrino gli altri*, let them set a good Example, before they instruct others.

*Alcuno,*

*Alcuno*, some one, has Gender, Number, and Case; viz. *alcuno, alcuna, alcuni, alcune* &c. Being put alone, it has the Nature of a Pronoun, and signifies a Person indeterminately: *allor mi strinsi a rimirar se alcuno riconoscessi*, I applied my self to them if I could know any of them; *secondo alcuni affermano*, as some assure.

We use *alcuno*, after a Verb, that is preceeded by the Particle *non*; as; *non vi è alcuna, che sia più bella di voi*, there is no Woman handsomer than you.

*Ciascuno*, or *ciascheduno*, every one, has no Plural, and it has the same Signification as *ognuno*; but with this Difference; that *ciascuno* marks some thing more particular, and *ognuno* has a more general Signification.

*Ma ciascuna per se pareva ben degna*, but each of them separately seemed well deserving.

*Ognun lo crede, e ben lo credo anch'io*, every Body believes it, and I believe it also.

*Qualunque*, and *Cbiunque*, have the same Signification, and signify whosoever. They are both indeclinable, and very seldom are found in the Plural Number; but the Difference between them is, that *cbiunque* is always spoken of a Person, and *qualunque* is spoken of the Person and of the Thing.

From the Pronouns *qual* and *che* is formed *qualche*, and it serves for all Genders, Numbers, and Cases.

*Qual-*

*Qualche tu sie, od Ombra, od Uomo certo*, who-soever you are, either a Ghost, or a real Man.

*In qualche Strada, o in qualche strano Lido*, in some way, or on some strange Shoar.

*Ogni* and *tutto*, all, have the same Signification; but the First is indeclinable, and for the Singular only; the Second is declinable, both for the Singular and Plural.

*Ogni Luogo m'attrista, ov'io non veggio que' begli Occhi soavi*, I am sad in every Place, where I do not see those sweet Eyes.

*In ogni Cosa le femmine sempre pigliano il peggio*, Women in every Thing, betake themselves to the Worst.

There are some Examples, where *ogni* is used in the Plural, but they are few; *appresso la festa d'ogni Santi*, All Saints Day: *i miei Affanni ogni altri trapassano di gran lunga*, my Misfortunes are by far greater than any.

*Ogni*, with *cosa*, signifies every; it may agree with the Noun Adjective of the masculine Gender; *fu ogni cosa di Romore, e di Pianto ripiena*, every Thing was full of Noise, and Grief; *caricata ogni cosa sene tornd in Palermo*, everay Thing being packed up, he returned to Palermo.

There is another Difference between *ogni* and *tutto*; viz. that the First being an Adjective, ought always to be followed by a Substantive; and *tutto* is often employed alone as a neuter absolute.

*Tutto* is used very gracefully without Article;  
as,

as, *che tutte altre Bellezze indietro vanno*, because all other Beauties do not come up to them : But when they are joined together, the Article must precede; as,

*Sopra gli Omeri avea sol due grand' Ali, di Colori mille, e tutto l'altro ignudo*, he had to his Shoulders two large Wings of sundry Colours, and the rest of the Body naked.

*Niuno*, or *nessuno*, formerly *neuno*, no one, or no Body, either without, or with the Negative *non*, were always taken negatively ; *non vado con nessuno*, I go with no Body ; but sometimes they are used affirmatively, if a Question be asked; as, *vi è nessuno, che mi voglia ?* is there any Body that wants me?

These two Pronouns may equally be accompanied by the Pronoun *altro* ; as, *niun' altro*, and *nessun' altro*, no Body else.

*Qualcuno*, and *qualche* some, have the same Signification; but the First is always singular, and the Second may be also plural, although it does not change its Termination.

*Veruno*, is the same as *niuno*; but the First has more Force in a negative Proposition.

*Note*, that these two Pronouns are taken negatively with the Particle *non* ; otherwise they serve to affirm; as, *non fa caldo veruno*, 'tis not hot at all; *seco nella sua Cella nela menò, che nessuna persona se n' accorse*, he carried her into his Cell, without being perceived by any Body.

*Stessa*

*Stesso*, the same or self, follows the Pronoun, with which it is joined; as, *io stesso*, I my self; *mia Madre stessa*, my Mother her self: It is used neutrally with the Article *lo*, and with the Pronouns *questo*, and *quello*; as, *lo stesso*, the same; *questo stesso*, this same; *quello stesso*, that same.

*Medesimo*, and in verse *medemo*, the same, is used like *stesso*, and follows the Pronouns it is joined with; *io medesimo*, I my self; *egli medesimo*, he himself.

*Tale*, such, or such an one, ought with more Reason to be called a Pronoun than any other; because, in some Cases where we do not mean a particular Person, it is an indefinite Term: It is common to the masculine and to the feminine Gender, and make *tali*, in the Plural for both Genders; *tale Carne*, *tale Coltello*, such Meat, such a Knife; *tali Mariti*, *tali Mogli*, such Husbands, such Wives.

*Tale*, is sometimes an Adjective of Similitude, between two or several Things; and in this Sense it is a Pronoun relative; and the Pronoun *quale* answers to it; as, *si pensò costui esser tale, quale la Malvagità de' Borgognoni il richiedeva*, this Man thought he was such, as the Wickedness of the *Burgundians* required.

*Tale*, supplies sometimes the Place of the Person, whose Name is not specified; as, *un tal Briccone dovrebbe esser punito*, such a Rogue ought to be punished.

We

We say *da tale e da quale*, instead of *Ognuno*, every one; as, *non sono le mie Bellezze da lasciarsi amare nè da tale, nè da quale*, my Charms are not for every one to be in Love with.

It is better to say *tal*, than *tale* in the Singular; as, *tal Marito, tal Donna*, such a Husband, such a Wife; and in the Plural, we often say *tui* and *ta'* instead of *tali*.

## CHAP. V.

### *Of Verbs.*

**T**O give a true Definition of a Verb in general, it must be considered, what is essential, and what is accidental to it.

The Verb, considered by what is essential to it, is a Part of Speech, which serves to describe the Being, and the State of Things, and of Persons, the Actions which they do, and the Impressions which they receive; ex. *essere*, to be; *Amare*, to love; *essere amato*, to be loved.

If we consider it, by what is accidental to it, 'tis a Part of Speech that receives divers Inflexions or Variations, distinguished among themselves by Moods, Tenses, Persons, Numbers and Conjugations.

*of*

*Of the Accidents of Verbs.*

They reckon six Accidents in Verbs, viz.

The Gender, or Form.	The Person.
The Tense.	The Number.
The Mood.	The Conjugation.

SECT. I.

*Of the Gender.*

The Gender or Form of Verbs, is that which shows their Nature, and proper Signification.

The First, and the most general Division of Verbs is to divide them into Personal, and Impersonal.

A Verb Personal is conjugated by three Persons; ex.

<i>Io amo</i> , I love.	<i>Noi amiamo</i> , we love.
<i>Tu ami</i> , thou lovest.	<i>Voi amate</i> , ye love.
<i>Egli ama</i> , he loves.	<i>Eglino amano</i> , they love.

A Verb Impersonal is conjugated by the third Person of the Singular only; ex. *piove*, it rains; *grandina*, it hails; *tuona*, it thunders.

A Verb considered in regard to the Syntax, is of four Sorts, viz. Active, Passive, Neuter, and Reciprocal.

An Active Verb is that which expresses an Action that passes from the Agent to the Patient; that is, from the Subject that does, or produces an Action, to that which suffers, or receives it;

ex.

ex. *un buon Padre ama i suoi Figliuoli*, a good Father loveth his Children; *ho mangiato un Polastro*, I have eat a Chicken.

A Passive Verb expresses the Suffering or Reception of an Action; as, *io sono lodato*, I am praised; *tu sei amato*, thou art loved.

A Neuter Verb serves to express the Existence of a Thing, or an Action which remains in the Subject that produces it; ex. *Io sono*, I am; *Io sto*, I stay or remain; *Io corro*, I run; *Io dormo*, I sleep.

A Verb Reciprocal is an Active Verb, that reflects the Action upon the Agent that produces it; ex. *rallegrarsi*, to rejoice one's self; *ricordarsi*, to remember; so that all Active Verbs may be turned into Reciprocal or reflected, by the Help of the Particles *mi*, *ti*, *si*, &c. *io mi amo*, I love my self; *tu ti lodi*, thou praisest thy self; *egli si crede*, he thinks himself.

## S E C T. II.

### *Of the Moods.*

A Mood is an accident of Verbs, which expresses the different Ways an Action is done by.

There are properly but four Moods; viz. the Indicative, Imperative, Conjunctive, and Infinitive.

The Indicative expresses the Action simply, directly,

rectly, and absolutely; ex. *io* ~~con~~<sup>as</sup> ~~indicative~~ <sup>indicative</sup> ~~modo~~,  
andò, he went; *ella verrà*, she will come.

The Imperative Mood commands, or forbids; ex. *va*, go thou; *che venga*, let him come; *non fate questo*, do not do that.

The Conjunctive is so called, First, because it is generally used with Conjunctions before it; such as, *che*, that; *benchè*, although; *affinchè*, that; or, to the End that; *purchè*, provided that; *voglia Dio che*, would to God that: Secondly, because it never makes a compleat Sense unless it be joined with the Indicative; as, *se vuoi ch'io l'ami*, if you will have me love him; *credo che l'averebbe a caro*, I believe he would be glad of it.

The Infinitive has an indeterminate Signification, and expresses the Action without any Circumstance, either of Number or Persons. It has in *Italian* but two Tenses, viz. The Present, and the Perfect; ex. *amare*, to love; *avere amato*, to have loved; and it is construed with the other Moods, by which only it is determined; ex. *io voglio parlare*, I will speak; *vorrei sapere*, I would know.

Some Grammarians multiply the Number of Moods, and, besides the Four already mentioned, they reckon the Potential, Conditional, and Optative, which is altogether void of Reason, since these three are all reducible to the Conjunctive.

ex. *un buon Padre* S E C T. III.

Father lo

last

*Of the Tenses.*

The Tense or Time, is that accident of Verbs, which shows when the Action is done ; so that there are properly but three Tenses ; viz. The Present, the Preter or Time past, and the Future, or Time to come : But the Preter in *Italian* is divided into five Branches generally called,

<i>In the Indicative Mood,</i>	<i>And in the Conjunctive.</i>
Preterimperfect.	First Preterimperfect.
Preterperfect Definite.	Second Preterimperfect.
Preterperfect.	Preterperfect.
First Preterpluperfect.	First Preterpluperfect.
Second Preterpluperfect.	Second Preterpluperfect.

The Imperative Mood has but one mixed Tense, which relates both to the Present and the Future.

The Infinitive has but two Tenses, viz. The Present, and the Future,

*Of the TENSES of the INDICATIVE Mood.*

The Indicative Mood, as we hinted before, has seven Tenses, of which four are Simple, and three Compound; the four Simple Tenses are,

1. The Present, which signifies the Time wherein the Action is doing; ex. *Io parlo*, I speak; *tu mangi*, thou eatest, &c.

2. The

2. The Preterimperfect, is ~~INDICATIVE~~ <sup>AS</sup> ~~INDICATIVE~~, it expresses an Action begun, and not finished; ex. *Io scrivevo quando entrò*, I was writing when he came in.

3. The third Simple Tense is called, Perfect Definite; because it is used to express a precise and determinate Time; ex. *Ieri parlai al Re*, yesterday I spoke to the King; but you must observe, that it is never used to signify an Action done the day we speak in.

4. The Future expresses an Action which is to be done; ex. *Io anderò*, I shall or will go; *egli manderà*, he shall or will send.

The three Compound Tenses are those that are compounded with the three First simple Tenses of the Auxiliary Verbs *Avere*, to have; or *essere*, to be; and the Participle Preter, or Passive, of the Verb which is to be conjugated; ex.

*Io ho parlato*, I have spoken.

*Io avevo parlato,*  
*Io ebbi parlato,* } I had spoken.

*Io sono venuto*, I am come.

*Io ero venuto,*  
*Io fui venuto,* } I was come.

The first Compound Tense, called Preterperfect, or Perfect Indefinite, is used to express an Action perfectly past, without determining any precise Time; or the Reiteration of an Action; ex. *io l'ho veduto prima di voi*, I have seen

g 2 it

ex. *un buon Padre ho parlato più di cento volte*, Father spoken to him above a hundred Times; *lasciare* it serves to express an Action done the same Day one speaks in; ex. *l'ho veduto stamattina*, I saw him this Morning.

The second Compound Tense, called first Preterpluperfect, expresses an Action, not only perfectly past, but done also before another, of which one speaks, was begun; ex. *avevo finito di scrivere, quando egli entrò*, I had done Writing when he came in; *l'Opera era finita, quando il Re partì*, the Opera was done, when the King went away; *avevo risoluto d'andare in Italia, ma i miei affari non me lo permisero*, I was resolved to go to Italy, but my Business did not permit me.

The third Compound Tense, commonly called second Pluperfect Tense, but more properly Definite Compound, expresses also an Action perfectly past, and preceeding another; and, besides, it has a perfect and determined Signification; as, *intesa ch' ebbi questa novella, ne feci partecipe suo Padre*, as soon as I had learned that News, I acquainted his Father with it.

#### *Of the TENSES of the IMPERATIVE Mood.*

This Mood, as we have said before, has but one Tense, which relates both to the Present, and the Future.

*of*

Of the TENSES of the CONJUNCTIVE Mood,

The three Simple Tenses are,

The Present, which sometimes has also a future Signification; ex. *benchè io ami*, though I love; *purchè vogliate*, provided you will; *supposto che venga*, suppose he comes.

The first Preterimperfect, called by some the uncertain Tense, but more properly the Future Conditional; as, *se tu m'amassi, io t'amerei*, if thou didst love me, I should love thee.

The third Simple Tense is the second Imperfect, which is derived from the Perfect Definite of the Indicative; ex. *benchè io amassi*, though I loved.

The four Compound Tenses are those that are formed of the three Simple Tenses of the Conjunctive Mood, and of the Future of the Indicative, of the Auxiliary Verbs *avere* to have, and *essere* to be, and the Participle past of the Verb, which is to be conjugated.

Ex. The Preterperfect; as, *io abbia amato*, I have loved; *io sia stato*, I have been.

First Preterpluperfect, or Preter Conditional; as, *io averei amato*, I had loved, or I should or would have loved; *sarei stato amato*, I had been loved, or I should or would have been loved.

Second Pluperfect; as, *avevsi amato*, I had loved; *fossi stato amato*, I had been loved.

Future; as, *averò amato*, I shall have loved; *farò stato amato*, I shall have been loved.

ex. ~~the~~ TENSES of the INFINITIVE Mood.

The Infinitive Mood has but two Tenses, one Simple, viz. the Present; ex. *amare*, to love; the other Compound, viz. the Preter; as, *avere amato*, to have loved.

#### S E C T. IV.

##### *Of the Persons.*

There are three Persons in Verbs, as in Pronouns; ex. *io amo*, *tu ami*, *egli* or *ella ama*, I love, thou lovest, he or she loves; *noi amiamo*, *voi amate*, *eglino* or *elleno*, *amano*, we love, ye love, they love.

#### S E C T. V.

##### *Of the Numbers.*

Every Tense, in the three first Moods, hath two Numbers, viz. the Singular; as, *io amo*, I love; and the Plural; as, *noi amiamo*, we love; which in the Conjugations we shall mark thus, S. P.

#### S E C T. VI.

##### *Of Conjugation.*

Conjugation is the due Distribution of the several Parts of Verbs; viz. Moods, Tenses, Persons, and Numbers.

There are three different Conjugations in Italian,

*lian*, which are distinguished by the Termination of the Infinitive.

The First,	} makes the Infinitive in	{	<i>are</i> ; as, <i>amare</i> , to love.
The Second,			<i>ere</i> ; long, as, <i>temere</i> , to fear ; and
The Third,			<i>ere</i> ; short ; as, <i>credere</i> , to believe.
			<i>ire</i> ; as, <i>dormire</i> , to sleep.

### General Rules for the Termination of Verbs.

I thought that one could more easily learn the Conjugation, if he would Form himself an Idea of all the Tenses : Therefore I shall give here some Rules, which will contribute very much to the Learning of them.

### Of the Tenses of the Indicative Mood.

All the first Persons Singular of the Present of the Indicative Mood, do terminate in *o* ; ex. *io amo*, I love ; *io credo*, I believe ; *io dormo*, I sleep. The second Persons Singular of the same Tense, are terminated in *i* ; ex. *tu ami*, thou lovest ; *tu credi*, thou believest ; *tu dormi*, thou sleepest.

The third Persons of the first Conjugation are terminated in *a* ; ex. *egli ama*, he loves : Those of the Second and Third, are terminated in *e* ; ex. *egli crede*, he believes ; *egli dorme*, he sleeps.

The first Persons of the Plural, terminate in *iamo* ; ex. *noi amiamo*, we love ; *noi crediamo*, we believe ; *noi dormiamo*, we sleep.

The second Persons in *ate*, *ete*, *ite* ; ex. *voi amate*, ye love ; *voi credete*, ye believe ; *voi dormite*, ye sleep.

ex. the third Persons terminate in *ano*, for the first Conjugation, and in *ono*, for the Second and third; ex. *eglino amano*, they love; *eglino credono*, they believe; *eglino dormono*, they sleep.

The first Persons of the Imperfect Tense, are terminated in *avo*, *evo*, *ivo*, for the Singular; as, *io amavo*, I did love; *io credevo*, I did believe; *io dormivo*, I did sleep.

The second Persons do terminate in *avi*, *evi*, *ivi*; ex. *tu amavi*, *tu credevi*, *tu dormivi*.

The third Persons, in *ava*, *eua*, *iva*; ex. *egli amava*, *egli credeva*, *egli dormiva*.

The first Persons Plural in *vàmo*; ex. *noi amavàmo*, *noi credevàmo*, *noi dormivàmo*.

The second in *vàte*; ex. *voi amavàte*, *voi credevàte*, *voi dormivàte*.

The third in *vano*; ex. *eglino amavano*, *eglino credevano*, *eglino dormivano*.

The first Persons Singular of the Preter Definite, are terminated in *ai*, for the first Conjugation; as, *io amai*, I loved; in *ei* for the Second, *io credei*, I believed; and in *ii*, for the Third; *io dormii*, I slept.

The second Persons, in *asti*, *esti*, *isti*; as, *tu amasti*, *tu credesti*, *tu dormisti*.

The third Persons, in *à*, *è*, *ì*; as, *egli amò*, *egli credè*, *egli dormì*.

The first Persons Plural in *ammo*, *emmo*, *immo*; as, *noi amammo*, *noi credemmo*, *noi dormimmo*.

The

The second Persons, in *aste*, *este*, *iste*; as, *voi amaste*, *voi credeste*, *voi dormiste*.

The third Persons, in *arano*, *erono*, *irono*; as, *eglino amarono*, *eglino crederono*, *eglino dormirono*.

The first Persons Singular of the Future, terminate in *erò* for the first and second Conjugation, and in *irò* for the Third; as, *io amerò*, I shall love; *io crederò*, I shall believe; *io dormirò*, I shall sleep.

The Second in *rai*; as, *tu amerai*, *tu crederai*, *tu dormirai*.

The Third in *rà*; as, *egli amerà*, *egli crederà*, *egli dormirà*.

The first Plural in *remo*; as *noi ameremo*, *noi crederemo*, *noi dormiremo*.

The Third in *ranno*; as, *eglino ameranno*, *eglino crederanno*, *eglino dormiranno*.

#### *Of the Imperative Mood.*

The second Persons Singular of the Imperative, terminate in *a*, for the first Conjugation; and in *i* for the Second and Third; ex. *ama tu*, love thou; *credi tu*, believe thou; *dormi tu*, sleep thou.

The third of the first Conjugation, terminate in *i*, and of the Second and Third in *a*; as *ami egli*, let him love; *creda egli*, let him believe; *dorma egli*, let him sleep.

The first of the Plural, in *iamo*; as *amiamo*, *crediamo*, *dormiamo*.

The

The Second in *ate*, *ete*, *ite*; as, *amate*, *credete*, *dormite*.

The Third in *ino*, for the first Conjugation; and in *ano*, for the Second and Third; as, *amino*, *credano*, *dormano*.

### *Of the Conjunctive Mood.*

The three Persons Singular of the Conjunctive Mood, for the first Conjugation, terminate in *i*; and for the Second and Third, are terminated in *a*; as, *ch'io*, *tu*, *egli ami*, that I, thou, he may love; *ch'io*, *tu*, *egli creda*, that I, thou, he may believe; *ch'io*, *tu*, *egli dorma*, that I, thou, he may sleep.

The first Persons Plural, in *iamo*, as, *noi amiamo*, *noi crediamo*, *noi dormiamo*.

The second Person in *iate*; as, *voi amiate*, *voi crediate*, *voi dormiate*.

The third Persons in *ino*, for the first Conjugation; and in *ano*, for the Second and Third; as, *eglino amino*, *eglino credano*, *eglino dormano*.

The first Persons of the second Imperfect, for the first Conjugation, do terminate in *assi*; in *essi*, for the Second; in *issi*, for the Third; as, *io amassi*, *io credessi*, *io dormissi*.

The second Persons, do terminate in the same; as, *tu amassi*, *tu credessi*, *tu dormissi*.

The third Persons in *asse*, *esse*, *isse*; as, *egli amasse*, *egli credesse*, *egli dormisse*.

The

The first Persons Plural in *assimo, essimo, issimo*; as, *noi amassimo, noi credessimo, noi dormissimo*.

The second Persons in *aste, este, iste*; as, *voi amaste, voi credeste, voi dormiste*.

The third Persons in *assero, essero, issero*; as *egli-  
no amassero, eglino credessero, eglino dormissero*.

The first Persons of the Preterimperfect, are terminated in *rei*; as, *io amerei, io crede-  
rei, io dormirei*.

The second Persons in *resti*; as, *tu amaresti, tu crederesti, tu dormiresti*.

The third Persons in *rebbe*; as, *egli amerebbe, egli crederebbe, egli dormirebbe*.

The first Persons Plural, terminate in *remmo*; as, *noi ameremmo, noi crederemmo, noi dormiremmo*.

The second Persons in *reste*; as, *voi amereste, voi credereste, voi dormireste*.

The third Persons in *rebbero*; as, *egli-  
no amerebbero, eglino crederebbero, eglino dormirebbero*.

### *Of the Infinitive Mood.*

The Infinitive Mood, for the first Conjugation, terminates in *are*; as, *amare*, to love; for the Second, in *ere* short or long; as, *credere*, to believe, *temere*, to fear; and for the Third in *ire*; as, *dormire*, to sleep.

The Gerund, or the Participle Active, for the first Conjugation, terminates in *ando*; as *amando*, loving; for the Second, and for the Third,

Third, in *endo* ; as, *credendo*, believing ; *dormendo*, sleeping.

The Participle Passive, does terminate in *ato*, for the first Conjugation ; as, *amato*, loved : in *uto*, for the Second ; as, *creduto*, believed : and in *ito*, for the Third ; as, *dormito*, slept. But there are a great many Exceptions for the Verbs of the Second and third Conjugation.

Before we proceed, we must take Notice of the *English* Conjugation, with reference to the *Italian* ; for, towards the true Understanding of the *Italian* Conjugation ; it is highly necessary to know the *English* too, and what Tenses in *English* answer the Tenses in *Italian*.

The *English*, both in the Indicative and Con-junctive Moods, have but five Tenses, as you see in the following Scheme.

INDICATIVE.	CONJUNCTIVE.
<i>Present</i> , I love, or I do love.	<i>Present</i> , I love.
<i>Imperfect</i> , I loved, or did love.	<i>Imperfect</i> , I loved, or I could, should, or would love.
<i>Perfect</i> , I loved, or I have loved.	<i>Perfect</i> , I have loved.
<i>Pluperfect</i> , I had loved.	<i>Pluperfect</i> , I had loved, or I should, would, could have loved.
<i>Future</i> , I shall, or will love.	<i>Futur</i> . I shall have loved.

Where you may observe, that the Con-junctive bor-

borrow all its Tenses from the Indicative, except the Future.

Now to return to our purpose; since, as you have seen before, the *Italians* have seven Tenses in both these Moods,

*First*, In the Indicative, the *English* Imperfect answers to the *Italian* Imperfect and Perfect Definite; and the Pluperfect to both Pluperfects; *ex.*

<i>Io amavo,</i>	}	I loved, or I did love.
<i>Io amai,</i>		
<i>Io avevo amato,</i>	}	I had loved.
<i>Io ebbi amato,</i>		

*Secondly*, In the Conjunctive Mood, the *English* Imperfect relates to both the *Italian* Imperfects, and the Pluperfect to both Pluperfects; as,

<i>Io amarei,</i>	}	I had loved, or I could, should,
<i>Io amassi,</i>		
<i>Io avrei amato,</i>	}	I had loved, or I could, should,
<i>Io avessi amato,</i>		

Which ought carefully to be observed, to avoid the common Mistake of those, who say, *io vidi stamattina*, instead of *io ho visto stamattina*, I saw this Morning; *ho visto ieri*, instead of *vidi ieri*, I saw Yesterday; *se io porterei*, instead of *se io portassi*, if I carried.

As for the Tenses of the Imperative and Infinitive

finite Moods, they are the same in *English* as in *Italian*.

But to return to the *Italian* Conjugations; you must observe that no Verb can be conjugated through all its Moods and Tenses, without these two, *avere*, to have; and *essere*, to be; which, upon that account, are called Auxiliary, or helping Verbs, and must be learned before one goes on to the Conjugation of others.

Some Grammarians reckon a third Auxiliary, viz. *Dovere*, to owe, or to be; because it is often joined with the Infinitive of other Verbs through most of its Moods, Tenses, and Persons, to signify an Action that must or shall be done; in this manner, *io devo andare*, I ought to go, or I must go; *tu dovresti far ciò*, you should do that; *dovendo partire per la Campagna*, being to go into the Country. But *Dovere* is no more an helping Verb, than many others, which are joined to the Infinitive, through all their Moods, Tenses, and Persons; such as *volere*, to will; *cominciare*, to begin, &c. because these Verbs can be conjugated without them.

*The*

# GRAMMAR. III

## *The Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb, avere, to have.*

### *Indicative Mood Present.*

S. *Io ho*, I have. *Tu hai*, thou hast. *Egli ha*,  
he hath.

P. *Noi abbiamo*, we have. *Voi avete*, ye have.  
*Eglino hanno*, they have..

### *Preter-Imperfect.*

S. *Io avevo*, *aveva*, or *avea*, I had. *Tu avevi*,  
thou hadst. *Egli aveva*, he had.

P. *Noi avevamo*, we had. *Voi avevate*, ye had.  
*Eglino avevano*, they had.

### *Preterperfect Definite.*

S. *Io ebbi*, I had. *Tu avesti*, thou hadst. *Egli ebbe*,  
he had.

P. *Noi avemmo*, we had. *Voi aveste*, ye had.  
*Eglino ebbero*, they had.

### *Preterperfect.*

S. *Io ho avuto*, I have had. *Tu hai avuto*, thou  
hast had. *Egli ha avuto*, he hath had.

P. *Noi abbiamo avuto*, we have had.  
*Voi avete avuto*, ye have had.  
*Eglino hanno avuto*, they have had.

*Eirst*

*First Preterpluperfect.*

- S. *Io avevo avuto*, I had had.  
*Tu avevi avuto*, thou hadst had.  
*Egli aveva avuto*, he had had.
- P. *Noi avevamo avuto*, we had had.  
*Voi avevate avuto*, ye had had.  
*Eglino avevano avuto*, they had had.

*Second Preterpluperfect.*

- S. *Io ebbi avuto*, I had had.  
*Tu avesti avuto*, thou hadst had.  
*Egli ebbe avuto*, he had had.
- P. *Noi avemmo avuto*, we had had.  
*Voi aveste avuto*, ye had had.  
*Eglino ebbero avuto*, they had had.

*Future.*

- S. *Io averò*, or *avrò*, I shall or will have.  
*Tu averai*, or *avrà*, thou shalt or wilt have.  
*Egli averà*, or *avrà*, he shall or will have.
- P. *Noi avremo*, or *avremo*, we shall or will have.  
*averete*, or *avrete*, ye shall or will have.  
*Eglino averanno*, or *avranno*, they shall or will have.

*Impe-*

*Imperative Mood.*

S. *Abbitu*, have thou. *Abbia egli*, let him have.

P. *Abbiamo noi*, let us have.

*Abbate voi*, have ye.

*Abbiano egliino*, let them have.

*Conjunctive Mood Present.*

S. *Che io abbia*, that I have.

*Tu abbia*, or *abbi*, thou have.

*Egli abbia*, he have.

P. *Noi abbiamo*, we have. *Voi abbiate*; ye have.

*Egliino abbiano*, they have.

*First Preterimperfect.*

S. *Io avrei*, or *aurei*, I should, would, or could have.

*Tu avresti*, or *avresti*, thou shouldst, &c. have.

*Egli averebbe*, *avrebbe*, or *averia*, he should have.

P. *Noi averemmo*, or *avremmo*, we should have.

*Voi avereste*, or *avreste*, ye should have.

*Egliino averebbero*, *avrebbero*, or *avriano*, they should have.

*Second Preterimperfect.*

S. *Che io avessi*, that I had, or I should, would, or could have.

*Tu avessi*, thou hadst, &c.

*Egli avesse*, he had, &c.

P. *Noi avessimo*, we had, &c.

*Voi aveste*, ye had, &c.

*Egliino avessero*, they had, &c.

h

Pre-

*Preterperfect.*

- S. *Che io abbia avuto*, that I have had.  
*Tu abbia avuto*, thou hast had.  
*Egli abbia avuto*, he hath had.
- P. *Noi abbiamo avuto*, we have had.  
*Voi abbiate avuto*, ye have had.  
*Eglino abbiano avuto*, they have had.

*First Preterpluperfect.*

- S. *Io avrei avuto*, I had had, or I could, should,  
or would have had.  
*Tu avresti avuto*, he had had, &c.  
*Egli avrebbe avuto*, he had had, &c.
- P. *Noi avremmo avuto*, we had had, &c.  
*Voi avreste avuto*, ye had had, &c.  
*Eglino avrebbero avuto*, they had had, &c.

*Second Preterpluperfect.*

- S. *Io avessi avuto*, I had had, or I could, should,  
or would have had.  
*Tu avessi avuto*, thou hadst had, &c.  
*Egli avesse avuto*, he had had, &c.
- P. *Noi avessimo avuto*, we had had, &c.  
*Voi aveste avuto*, ye had had, &c.  
*Eglino avessero avuto*, they had had, &c.

*Future.*

- S. *Io averò avuto*, I shall have had.  
*Tu averai avuto*, thou shalt have had.  
*Egli averà avuto*, he shall have had.

P. *Noi*

- P. *Noi averemo avuto*, we shall have had.  
*Voi averete avuto*, ye shall have had.  
*Eglino averanno avuto*, they shall have had.

*Infinitive Mood.*

- Present. *Avere*, to have.  
 Preterperfect. *Avere avuto*, to have had.

*Participles.*

- Present. *Avendo*, having.  

<i>Coll' avere,</i>	}	In having, or by having.
<i>Con avere,</i>		
<i>In avere,</i>		
<i>Nell' avere,</i>		

 Preterperfect. *Avendo avuto*, having had.

*The Supine, or Participle Passive.*

*Avuto, avuta, avuti, avute*, had.

*The Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb, essere, to be.*

*Indicative Present.*

- S. *Io sono*, I am. *Tu sei*, thou art. *Egli è*, he is.  
 P. *Noi siamo*, we are. *Voi siete*, or *siete*, ye are.  
*Eglino sono*, they are.

*Preterimperfect.*

- S. *Io ero*, I was. *Tu eri*, thou wast.  
*Egli era*, he was.

h 2

P. *Noi*

- P. *Noi eràmo*, or *eravàmo*, we were.  
*Voi eràte*, or *eravàte*, ye were.  
*Eglino erano*, they were.

*Preterperfect Definite.*

- S. *Io fui*, I was. *Tu fosti*, thou wast.  
*Egli fu*, he was.  
P. *Noi fummo*, we were. *Voi foste*, ye were.  
*Eglino furono*, they were.

*Preterperfect.*

- S. *Io sono stato*, I have been.  
*Tu sei stato*, thou hast been.  
*Egli è stato*, he has been.  
P. *Noi siamo stati*, we have been.  
*Voi siete*, or *fete stati*, ye have been.  
*Eglino sono stati*, they have been.

*First Preterpluperfect.*

- S. *Io ero stato*, I had been.  
*Tu eri stato*, thou hadst been.  
*Egli era stato*, he had been.  
P. *Noi eramo stati*, we had been.  
*Voi erate stati*, ye had been.  
*Eglino erano stati*, they had been.

*Second Preterpluperfect.*

- S. *Io fui stato*, I had been.  
*Tu fosti stato*, thou hadst been.  
*Egli fu stato*, he had been.

P. *Noi*

- P. *Noi fummo stati*, we had been.  
*Voi foste stati*, ye had been.  
*Eglino furono stati*, they had been.

*Future.*

- S. *Io farò*, I shall, or will be.  
*Tu farai*, thou shalt, or wilt be.  
*Egli farà*, he shall, or will be.  
P. *Noi faremo*, we shall, or will be.  
*Voi farete*, ye shall, or will be.  
*Eglino faranno*, they shall, or will be.

*Imperative.*

- S. *Sii*, or *sia tu*, be thou. *Sia egli*, let him be.  
P. *Siamo noi*, let us be. *Siate*, or *siete voi*, be ye.  
*Siano*, or *siino eglino*, let them be.

*Conjunctive Present.*

- S. *Che io sia*, that I be. *Tu sia*, or *sii*, thou be.  
*Egli sia*, he be.  
P. *Noi siamo*, we be. *Voi siate*, ye be. *Eglino siano*, or *siino*, they be.

*First Preterimperfect.*

- S. *Io farei*, I should, would, or could be.  
*Tu faresti*, thou shouldst be, &c.  
*Egli farebbe*, or *saria*, he should be, &c.  
P. *Noi faremmo*, we should be, &c.  
*Voi fareste*, ye should be, &c.  
*Eglino farebbero*, or *sariano*, they should be, &c.

h 3

Se-

*Second Preterimperfect.*

S. *Io fossi*, I were, or I should, would, or could be.

*Tu fossi*, thou wert, &c.

*Egli fosse*, he were, &c.

P. *Noi fossimo*, we were, &c.

*Voi foste*, ye were, &c.

*Eglino fossero*, they were, &c.

*Preterperfect.*

S. *Io sia stato*, I have been.

*Tu sia stato*, thou hast been.

*Egli sia stato*, he hath been.

P. *Noi siamo stati*, we have been.

*Voi siate stati*, ye have been.

*Eglino siano stati*, they have been.

*First Preterpluperfect.*

S. *Io sarei stato*, I had been, or I should, would, or could have been.

*Tu saresti stato*, thou hadst been, &c.

*Egli sarebbe stato*, he had been, &c.

P. *Noi saremmo stati*, we had been; &c.

*Voi sareste stati*, ye had been, &c.

*Eglino sarebbero stati*, they had been, &c.

*Second Preterpluperfect.*

S. *Io fossi stato*, I had been, or I could, would, or should have been.

*Tu*

*Tu fossi stato*, thou hadst been, &c.

*Egli fosse stato*, he had been, &c.

P. *Noi fossimo stati*, we had been, &c.

*Voi foste stati*, ye had been, &c.

*Eglino fossero stati*, they had been. &c.

*Future.*

S. *Io sarò stato*, I shall have been.

*Tu sarai stato*, thou shalt have been.

*Egli sarà stato*, he shall have been.

P. *Noi saremo stati*, we shall have been.

*Voi sarete stati*, ye shall have been.

*Eglino saranno stati*, they shall have been.

*Infinitive.*

Present. *Essere*, to be.

Preterperfect. *Essere stato*, to have been.

*Supine, or Participle Passive.*

*Stato, stata, stati, state*, been.

*Participles.*

Present. *Essendo*, being.

*Coll' essere,*

*Con essere,*

*In essere,*

*Nell' essere,*

} In being.

Preterperfect. *Essendo stato*, having been.

h 4

Ob-

*Observations upon the Auxiliary Verbs.*

By the foregoing Conjugations, you may see, that the Verbs *avere* and *essere* are composed by themselves, in which the *English* are sometimes mistaken; because their Participles *had*, and *been*, are both governed by the Verb to have; so they say, I have had, and I have been; but in *Italian*, the Participle *avuto*, had, is governed by the Verb *avere*; *ho avuto*, I have had; and the Participle *stato*, been, by the Verb *essere*; *sono stato*, I have been; through all the Tenses.

*Note*, also, that *stato* is declinable; so we say *stato*, for the masculine Singular, *stata* for the Feminine, *stati* for the masculine Plural, and *state* for the Feminine.

Although I have spoken at large of the Termination of Tenses in the Section of the Conjugations; yet I thought, that to put all those Terminations together in a Table, would be more clear, and sooner learned; by which it will appear, that from the infinitive Mood of the three Conjugations, one may form all the Tenses of all the Moods, by taking off the three last Letters: Let other Grammarians say what they will, their Way of forming the Terminations of Tenses, is perplexed and intricate; and I dare say, that a Beginner would sooner, and  
with

with more Facility, learn their Verbs by getting them by heart, than by studying their Rules.

At the Beginning of the Lines of this Table are the Infinitives, over-against them are the Terminations of each Tense, which are to be joined to the Infinitive, striking off first the three last Letters; ex. *amare*, strike off *are*, it remains *am*, add *o* to it, you'll make *amo*, and so through all the Tenses.

*Note*, that this Table serves only for the regular Verbs; because for the Irregular, we shall give a Table apart.

*Indicative Mood Present.*

am	are	o	i	a	iamo	ate	ano
cred	ere	o	i	e	iamo	ete	ono
dorm	ire	o	i	e	iamo	ite	ono

*Preterimperfect.*

am	are	avo	avi	ava	avàmo	avàte	àvano
cred	ere	evo	evi	eva	evàmo	evàte	èvano
dorm	ire	ivo	ivi	iva	ivàmo	ivàte	ìvano

*Preterperfect Definite.*

am	are	ai	asti	ò	ammo	aste	arono
cred	ere	ei	esti	è	emmo	este	erono
dorm	ire	ii	isti	ì	immo	iste	irono

*Future.*

am	are	erò	erai	erà	eremo	erete	eranno
cred	ere	erò	erai	erà	eremo	erete	eranno
dorm	ire	irò	irai	irà	iremo	irete	iranno

*Im-*

*Imperative Mood.*

am	are	a	i	iamo	ate	ino
cred	ere	i	a	iamo	ete	ano
dorm	ire	i	a	iamo	ite	ano

*Conjunctive Mood Present.*

am	are	i	i	i	iamo	iate	ino
cred	ere	a	a	a	iamo	iate	ano
dorm	ire	a	a	a	iamo	iate	ano

*First Preterimperfect.*

am	are	erel	eresti	erebbe	eremmo	ereste	erebbero
cred	ere	erei	eresti	erebbe	eremmo	ereste	erebbero
dorm	ire	irei	iresti	irebbe	iremmo	ireste	irebbero

*Second Preterimperfect.*

am	are	assi	assi	asse	assimo	aste	assero
cred	ere	essi	essi	esse	essimo	este	essero
dorm	ire	issi	issi	isse	issimo	iste	issero

*Participle.*

am	are	ato
cred	ere	uto
dorm	ire	ito

*Gerund.*

am	are	ando
cred	ere	endo
dorm	ire	endo

*Variations of the Auxiliary Verb, avere, to have, which are used only in Poetry.*

*Haggio,* } instead of *ho*, I have.  
*Habbio,* }

*Have,* } instead of *ha*, he or she has.  
*Hae,* }

*Ha-*

*Havite*, for *havete*, ye have.

*Havei*, for *havevi*, thou hadst.

*Hei*, for *hebbi*, I had.

*Hebbon*, for *hebbero*, they had.

*Haraggio*, for *haverò*, I shall have.

*Haggia*, for *habbia*, that he or she have.

*Haggiate*, for *habbiate*, that ye have.

*Haveffi*, for *haveste*, that he had, or should have.

*Haveffin*, for *haveffero*, that they had, or should have.

*Haria*, for *averia*, or *haverebbe*, he or she should have.

*Hariano*, for *havriano*, or *haverebbero*, they should have.

*Of the Verb essere*, to be.

*So*, for *sono*, I am.

*Ene*,  
*Ee*,  
*Este*,  
*Eve*, } for *è*, he or she is.

*Semo*, for *siamo*, we are.

*Enno*, for *sono*, they are.

*Fue*, for *fu*, he or she was.

*Foffin*, for *foffero*, that they were.

*Fora*, for *sarei*, or *sarebbe*, I or he should be.

*Saria*, for *sarei*, or *sarebbe*, I or he should be.

*Sariano*, for *sarebbero*, they should be.

*Sendo*,

*Sendo*, for *essendo*, being.

*Suto*, for *stato*, been.

Although, what we have said about the forming of Verbs, might suffice, for to know all the Conjugations; however, I have thought it useful to give here some Examples.

I begin by the regular Verbs, of each Conjugation; we shall speak afterwards of the Irregular, where I shall give the Remarks, of each one in particular, that I thought the most proper.

*The three Conjugations of regular Active Verbs.*

*The first Conjugation in are; as amare, to love.*

*Indicative Present.*

S. *In amo*, I love.

*Tu ami*, thou lovest.

*Egli ama*, he loveth.

P. *Noi amiamo*, we love.

*Voi amate*, ye love.

*Eglino amano*, they love.

*Preterimperfect.*

S. *Io amavo*, I loved, or did love.

*Tu amavi*, thou lovedst, &c.

*Egli amava*, he loved, &c.

P. *Noi amavamo*, we loved, &c.

*Voi amavate*, ye loved, &c.

*Eglino amavano*, they loved, &c.

*Preter-*

*Preterperfect Definite.*

- S. *Io amai*, I loved, or did love.  
*Tu amasti*, thou lovedst, &c.  
*Egli amò*, he loved, &c.
- P. *Noi amammo*, we loved, &c.  
*Voi amaste*, ye loved, &c.  
*Eglino amarono*, they loved, &c.

*Preterperfect.*

- S. *Io ho amato*, I have loved.  
*Tu hai amato*, thou hast loved.  
*Egli ha amato*, he has loved.
- P. *Noi abbiamo amato*, we have loved.  
*Voi avete amato*, ye have loved.  
*Eglino hanno amato*, they have loved.

*First Preterpluperfect.*

- S. *Io avevo amato*, I had loved.  
*Tu avevi amato*, thou hadst loved.  
*Egli aveva amato*, he had loved.
- P. *Noi avevamo amato*, we had loved.  
*Voi avevate amato*, ye had loved.  
*Eglino avevano amato*, they had loved.

*Second Preterpluperfect.*

- S. *Io ebbi amato*, I had loved.  
*Tu avesti amato*, thou hadst loved.  
*Egli ebbe amato*, he had loved.
- P. *Noi avemmo amato*, we had loved.  
*Voi avevate amato*, ye had loved.  
*Eglino ebbero amato*, they had loved.

*Futu-*

*Future.*

- S. *Io amerò*, I shall, or will love.  
*Tu amerai*, thou shalt, or wilt love.  
*Egli amerà*, he shall, or will love.
- P. *Noi ameremo*, we shall, or will love.  
*Voi amerete*, ye shall, or will love.  
*Eglino ameranno*, they shall, or will love.

*Imperative.*

- S. *Ama*, love thou. *Ami*, let him love.
- P. *Amiamo*, let us love. *Amate*, love ye.  
*Amino*, let them love.

*Conjunctive Present.*

- S. *Che io ami*, that I love, or may love.  
*Che tu ami*, that thou lovest, or may'st love.  
*Che egli ami*, that he loveth, or may love.
- P. *Che noi amiamo*, that we love, or may love.  
*Che voi amiate*, that ye love, or may love.  
*Che eglino amino*, that they love, or may love.

*First Imperfect.*

- S. *Io amerei*, I should, would, or could love.  
*Tu amaresti*, thou should'st, &c. love.  
*Egli amerebbe*, he should, &c. love.
- P. *Noi ameremmo*, we should, &c. love.  
*Voi amereste*, ye should, &c. love.  
*Eglino amerebbero*, they should, &c. love.

*Second*

*Second Imperfect.*

S. *Io amassi*, I loved, or I should, would, or could love.

*Tu amassi*, thou lovedst, &c.

*Egli amasse*, he loved, &c.

P. *Noi amassimo*, we loved, &c.

*Voi amaste*, ye loved, &c.

*Eglino amassero*, they loved, &c.

*Preterperfect.*

S. *Io abbia amato*, I have loved.

*Tu abbia amato*, thou hast loved.

*Egli abbia amato*, he hath loved.

P. *Noi abbiamo amato*, we have loved.

*Voi abbiate amato*, ye have loved.

*Eglino abbiano amato*, they have loved.

*First Pluperfect.*

S. *Io avrei amato*, I had loved, or I should, would, or could have loved.

*Tu avresti amato*, thou hadst loved, &c.

*Egli avrebbe amato*, he had loved, &c.

P. *Noi averemmo amato*, we had loved, &c.

*Voi avreste amato*, ye had loved, &c.

*Eglino avrebbero amato*, they had loved, &c.

*Second Pluperfect.*

S. *Io avrei amato*, I had loved, or I should, would, or could have loved.

*Tu*

*Tu avessi amato*, thou hadst loved, &c.

*Egli avesse amato*, he had loved, &c.

P. *Noi avessimo amato*, we had loved, &c.

*Voi aveste amato*, ye had loved, &c.

*Eglino avessero amato*, they had loved, &c.

### Future.

S. *Io averò amato*, I shall have loved.

*Tu averai amato*, thou shalt have loved.

*Egli averà amato*, he shall have loved.

P. *Noi averemo amato*, we shall have loved.

*Voi averete amato*, ye shall have loved.

*Eglino avranno amato*, they shall have loved.

Infinitive Present. *Amare*, to love.

Preterperfect. *Avere amato*, to have loved.

Participle. *Amato*, loved.

Gerund. *Amando*, loving.

*Coll' amare*,

*Con amare*,

*In amare*,

*Nell' amare*,

} in loving.

*Avendo amato*, having loved.

*The Second Conjugation in ere; as credere, to believe.*

### Indicative Present.

S. *Io credo*, I believe.

*Tu credi*, thou believest.

*Egli crede*, he believeth.

P. *Noi*

- P. *Noi credevamo*, we believed, &c.  
*Voi credevate*, ye believed, &c.  
*Eglino credevano*, they believed, &c.

*Preterperfect Definite.*

- S. *Io credei*, or *credetti*, I believed, or did believe.  
*Tu credesti*, thou believedst, &c.  
*Egli credè*, he believed, &c.  
P. *Noi credemmo*, we believed, &c.  
*Voi credeste*, ye believed, &c.  
*Eglino crederono*, or *credettero*, they believed, &c.

*Preterperfect.*

- S. *Io ho creduto*, I have believed.  
*Tu hai creduto*, thou hast believed.  
*Egli ha creduto*, he hath believed.  
P. *Noi abbiamo creduto*, we have believed.  
*Voi avete creduto*, ye have believed.  
*Eglino hanno creduto*, they have believed.

*First Preterpluperfect.*

- S. *Io avevo creduto*, I had believed,  
*Tu avevi creduto*, thou hadst believed.  
*Egli aveva creduto*, he had believed.  
P. *Noi avevamo creduto*, we had believed.  
*Voi avevate creduto*, ye had believed.  
*Eglino avevano creduto*, they had believed.

i

Second

*Second Preterpluperfect.*

- S. *Io ebbi creduto*, I had believed.  
*Tu avevsti creduto*, thou hadst believed.  
*Egli ebbe creduto*, he had believed.
- P. *Noi avemmo creduto*, we had believed.  
*Voi avevste creduto*, ye had believed.  
*Eglino ebbero creduto*, they had believed.

*Future.*

- S. *Io crederò*, I shall, or will believe.  
*Tu crederai*, thou shalt, or wilt believe.  
*Egli crederà*, he shall, or will believe.
- P. *Noi crederemo*, we shall, or will believe.  
*Voi crederete*, ye shall, or will believe.  
*Eglino crederanno*, they shall, or will believe.

*Imperative.*

- S. *Credi*, believe thou. *Creda*, let him believe.
- P. *Crediamo*, let us believe. *Credete*, believe ye.  
*Credano*, let them believe.

*Conjunctive.*

- S. *Che io creda*, that I believe, or may believe.  
*Che tu creda*, that thou believest, &c.  
*Che egli creda*, that he believeth, &c.
- P. *Che noi crediamo*, that we believe, &c.  
*Che voi crediate*, that ye believe, &c.  
*Che eglino credano*, that they believe, &c.  
*First*

*First Imperfect.*

- S. *Io crederei*, I should, would, or could believe.  
*Tu crederesti*, thou should'st believe, &c.  
*Egli crederebbe*, or *credereia*, he should believe, &c.
- P. *Noi crederemmo*, we should believe, &c.  
*Voi credereste*, ye should believe, &c.  
*Eglino crederebbero*, or *credेरiano*, they should believe, &c.

*Second Imperfect.*

- S. *Io credeffi*, I believed, or should, would, or could believe.  
*Tu credeffi*, thou believedst, &c.  
*Egli credesse*, he believed, &c.
- P. *Noi credeffimo*, we believed, &c.  
*Voi credeste*, ye believed, &c.  
*Eglino credeffero*, they believed, &c.

*Preterperfect.*

- S. *Io abbia creduto*, I have believed.  
*Tu abbia creduto*, thou hast believed.  
*Egli abbia creduto*, he hath believed.
- P. *Noi abbiamo creduto*, we have believed.  
*Voi abbiate creduto*, ye have believed.  
*Eglino abbiano creduto*, they have believed.

*First Preterpluperfect.*

- S. *Io averei creduto*, I had believed, or should, would, or could have believed.  
*Tu averesti creduto*, thou hadst believed, &c.  
*Egli averebbe creduto*, he had believed, &c.

1 2 Noi

- P. *Noi averemmo creduto*, we had believed, &c.  
*Voi avereste creduto*, ye had believed, &c.  
*Eglino avrebbero creduto*, they had believed, &c.

*Second Preterpluperfect.*

- S. *Io avessi creduto*, I had believed, or I should have believed.  
*Tu avessi creduto*, thou hadst believed, &c.  
*Egli avesse creduto*, he had believed, &c.  
P. *Noi avessimo creduto*, we had believed, &c.  
*Voi aveste creduto*, ye had believed, &c.  
*Eglino avessero creduto*, they had believed, &c.

*Future.*

- S. *Io averò creduto*, I shall have believed.  
*Tu averai creduto*, thou shalt have believed.  
*Egli avrà creduto*, he shall have believed.  
P. *Noi avremo creduto*, we shall have believed.  
*Voi averete creduto*, ye shall have believed.  
*Eglino avranno creduto*, they shall have believed.  
Infinitive Present. *Credere*, to believe.  
Preterperfect. *Avere creduto*, to have believed.  
Gerund. *Credendo*, believing.  
Participle. *Creduto*, believed.

*The third Conjugation in ire; as dormire, to sleep.*

*Indicative Present.*

- S. *Io dormo*, I sleep. *Tu dormi*, thou sleepest.  
*Egli dorme*, he sleepeth.

P. *Noi*

- P. *Noi dormiamo*, we sleep.  
*Voi dormite*, ye sleep.  
*Eglino dormono*, they sleep.

*Preterimperfect.*

- S. *Io dormivo*, I slept, or did sleep.  
*Tu dormivi*, thou sleptest, &c.  
*Egli dormiva*, he slept, &c.  
P. *Noi dormivamo*, we slept, &c.  
*Voi dormivate*, ye slept, &c.  
*Eglino dormivano*, they slept, &c.

*Preterperfect Definite.*

- S. *Io dormii*, I slept, or I did sleep.  
*Tu dormisti*, thou sleptest, &c.  
*Egli dormì*, he slept, &c.  
P. *Noi dormimmo*, we slept, &c.  
*Voi dormiste*, ye slept, &c.  
*Eglino dormirono*, they slept, &c.

*Preterperfect.*

- S. *Io ho dormito*, I have slept.  
*Tu hai dormito*, thou hadst slept.  
*Egli ha dormito*, he hath slept.  
P. *Noi abbiamo dormito*, we have slept.  
*Voi avete dormito*, ye have slept.  
*Eglino hanno dormito*, they have slept.

*First Preterpluperfect.*

- S. *Io avevo dormito*, I had slept.  
*Tu avevi dormito*, thou hadst slept.  
*Egli aveva dormito*, he had slept.  
P. *Noi avevamo dormito*, we had slept.  
*Voi avevate dormito*, ye had slept.  
*Eglino avevano dormito*, they had slept.

*Second Preterpluperfect.*

- S. *Io ebbi dormito*, I had slept.  
*Tu avesti dormito*, thou hadst slept.  
*Egli ebbe dormito*, he had slept.  
P. *Noi avemmo dormito*, we had slept.  
*Voi avevate dormito*, ye had slept.  
*Eglino ebbero dormito*, they had slept.

*Future.*

- S. *Io dormirò*, I shall, or will sleep.  
*Tu dormirai*, thou shalt, or wilt sleep.  
*Egli dormirà*, he shall, or will sleep.  
P. *Noi dormiremo*, we shall, or will sleep.  
*Voi dormirete*, ye shall, or will sleep.  
*Eglino dormiranno*, thsy shall, or will sleep.

*Imperative.*

- S. *Dormi*, sleep thou.  
*Dorma egli*, let him sleep.

P. *Dor-*

- P. *Dormiamo*, let us sleep.  
*Dormite*, sleep ye.  
*Dormano*, let them sleep.

*Conjunctive Present.*

- S. *Che io dorma*, that I sleep, or I may sleep.  
*Che tu dorma*, that thou sleepest, &c.  
*Che egli dorma*, that he sleepeth, &c.  
P. *Che noi dormiamo*, that we sleep, &c.  
*Che voi dormiate*, that ye sleep, &c.  
*Che eglino ddrmano*, that they sleep.

*First Imperfect.*

- S. *Io dormirei*, I should, would, or could sleep.  
*Tu dormiresti*, thou should'st, &c. sleep.  
*Egli dormirebbe*, he should, &c. sleep.  
P. *Noi dormiremmo*, we should, &c. sleep.  
*Voi dormireste*, ye should, &c. sleep.  
*Eglino dormirebbero*, they should, &c. sleep.

*Second Imperfect.*

- S. *Io dormissi*, I slept, or I should, would, or could sleep.  
*Tu dormissi*, thou sleptest, &c.  
*Egli dormisse*, he slept, &c.  
P. *Noi dormissimo*, we slept, &c.  
*Voi dormiste*, ye slept, &c.  
*Eglino dormissero*, they slept, &c.

*Preterperfect.*

- S. *Io abbia dormito*, I have slept.  
*Tu abbia dormito*, thou hast slept.  
*Egli abbia dormito*, he hath slept.

- P. *Noi abbiamo dormito*, we have slept.  
*Voi abbiate dormito*, ye have slept.  
*Eglino abbiano dormito*, they have slept.

*First Preterpluperfect.*

- S. *Io avrei dormito*, I had slept, or I should,  
 would, or could have slept.  
*Tu avresti dormito*, thou hadst slept, &c.  
*Egli avrebbe dormito*, he had slept, &c.  
 P. *Noi averemmo dormito*, we had slept, &c.  
*Voi avreste dormito*, ye had slept, &c.  
*Eglino avrebbero dormito*, they had slept, &c.

*Second Preterpluperfect.*

- S. *Io avrei dormito*, I had slept, or I should,  
 would, or could have slept.  
*Tu avessi dormito*, thou hadst slept, &c.  
*Egli avesse dormito*, he had slept, &c.  
 P. *Noi avessimo dormito*, we had slept, &c.  
*Voi aveste dormito*, ye had slept, &c.  
*Eglino avessero dormito*, they had slept, &c.

*Future.*

- S. *Io averò dormito*, I shall have slept.  
*Tu averai dormito*, thou shalt have slept.  
*Egli avrà dormito*, he shall have slept.  
 P. *Noi avremo dormito*, we shall have slept.  
*Voi avrete dormito*, ye shall have slept.  
*Eglino avranno dormito*, they shall have slept.  
 Inf.

Infinitive Present. *Dormire*, to sleep.

Preterpluperfect. *Avere dormito*, to have slept.

Gerund. *Dormendo*, sleeping.

Participle, *Dormito*, slept.

*Of the Conjugation of Passive Verbs.*

The Conjugation of Passive Verbs is very easy, and consists (both in *Italian* and *English*) only in the joining the Participle Passive of any Verb to be conjugated, to the Auxiliary Verb *essere*, to be, through all its Moods, Tenses, Numbers, and Persons. But you must observe, that in *Italian*, the Participle varies according to the Difference of Gender and Number. Ex.

*Essere amato*, to be loved.

*Indicative Present.*

S. *Io sono amato*, I am loved.

*Tu sei amato*, thou art loved.

*Egli è amato*, he is loved.

P. *Noi siamo amati*, we are loved.

*Voi siete amati*, ye are loved.

*Eglino sono amati*, they are loved.

Imperfect. *Io ero amato*, &c. }

Perfect Definite. *Io fui amato*, &c. } I was loved.

Preterperfect. *Io sono stato amato*, &c. I have been loved.

First

First Pluper. *Io ero stato amato*, &c. } I had been  
 Second Pluper. *Io fui stato amato*, &c. } loved.  
 Future. *Io sarò amato*, &c. I shall be loved.

After the same Manner are conjugated the Imperative, Conjunctive, and Infinitive Moods of the first Conjugation.

*Note*, that Verbs which end in *care*, or *gare*, take an *b* after *c* and *g*, in those Tenses where *c* and *g* come before *e* or *i*; that is to say, in the Present of the Indicative Mood, in the Future, in the Imperative, and Conjunctive Moods, and in the first Imperfect of the Conjunctive Mood, of which I shall give here two Examples.

*Peccare*, to sin.

*Indicative Present.*

- S. *Io pecco*, I sin. *Tu pecchi*, thou sinnest.  
*Egli pecca*, he sinnest.  
 P. *Noi pecciamo*, we sin. *Voi peccate*, ye sin.  
*Eglino peccano*, they sin.

*Future.*

- S. *Io peccherò*, I shall sin.  
*Tu peccherai*, thou shalt sin.  
*Egli peccherà*, he shall sin.  
 P. *Noi peccheremo*, we shall sin.  
*Voi peccherete*, ye shall sin.  
*Eglino peccheranno*, they shall sin.

*Im-*

*Imperative .*

- S. *Pecca*, fin thou. *Pecchi*, let him fin.  
 P. *Pecchiamo*, let us fin. *Peccate*, fin ye.  
*Pecchino*, let them fin.

*Conjunctive Present .*

- S. *Che io pecchi*, that I fin.  
*Che tu pecchi*, that thou finnest.  
*Che egli pecchi*, that he finneth.  
 P. *Che noi pecchiamo*, that we fin.  
*Che voi pecchiate*, that ye fin.  
*Che eglino pecchino*, that they fin.

*First Imperfect .*

- S. *Io peccherei*, I should fin.  
*Tu peccheresti*, thou shouldst fin.  
*Egli peccherebbe*, he should fin.  
 P. *Noi peccheremmo*, he should fin.  
*Voi pecchereste*, ye should fin.  
*Eglino peccherebbero*, they should fin.

*Pagare, to pay .**Indicative Present .*

- S. *Io pago*, I pay. *Tu paghi*, thou payest.  
*Egli paga*, he payeth.  
 P. *Noi paghiamo*, we pay. *Voi pagate*, ye pay.  
*Eglino pagano*, they pay.

Fu-

*Future.*

- S. *Io pagherò*, I shall pay.  
*Tu pagherai*, thou shalt pay.  
*Egli pagherà*, he shall pay.
- P. *Noi pagheremo*, we shall pay.  
*Voi pagherete*, or *arete*, ye shall pay.  
*Eglino pagheranno*, they shalt pay.

*Imperative.*

- S. *Paga*, pay thou. *Paghi*, let him pay.
- P. *Paghiamo*, let us pay. *Pagate*, pay ye.  
*Paghino*, let them pay.

*Conjunctive Present.*

- S. *Che io paghi*, that I pay.  
*Che tu paghi*, that thou payest.  
*Che egli paghi*, that he payeth.
- P. *Che noi paghiamo*, that we pay.  
*Che voi paghiate*, that ye pay.  
*Che eglino paghino*, that they pay.

*First Imperfect.*

- S. *Io pagherei*, I should pay.  
*Tu pagheresti*, thou shouldst pay.  
*Egli pagherebbe*, he should pay.
- P. *Noi pagheremmo*, we should pay.  
*Voi paghereste*, ye should pay.  
*Eglino pagherebbero*, they should pay.

*The*

*The Conjugation of reflected and reciprocal Verbs.*

A reflected Verb, as I have hinted before, is generally nothing but an Active Verb, whose Action returns upon the Agent that produces it; as, *Io mi levo*, I rise; &c. Now this Reflexion of the Action is marked with these personal Pronouns *mi*, *ti*, *si*, in the Singular; and *ci*, *vi*, *si*, in the Plural; but so, that its compound Tenses are formed with the Auxiliary *essere*.

'Tis true, that some Verbs are always reflected, and these are known by the Infinitive Mood, where the Pronoun *si* goes always after them; as, *pentirsi*, to repent; *dolersi*, to complain.

The following Example will be sufficient to learn how to conjugate any reflected Verbs

*Levarsi*, to rise.

*Indicative Present.*

S. *Io mi levo*, I rise. *Tu ti levi*, thou risest.

*Egli si leva*, he riseth.

P. *Noi ci leviamo*, we rise. *Voi vi levate*, we rise.

*Eglino si levano*, they rise.

*Imperfect.*

S. *Io mi levavo*, I did rise.

*Tu ti levavi*, thou didst rise.

*Egli si levava*, he did rise.

P. *Noi*

- P. *Noi ci levavamo*, we did rise.  
*Voi vi levavate*, he did rise.  
*Eglino si levavano*, they did rise.

*Perfect Definite.*

- S. *Io mi levai*, I rose, or did rise.  
*Tu ti levasti*, thou rosest, &c.  
*Egli si levò*, he rose, &c.  
P. *Noi ci levammo*, we rose, &c.  
*Voi vi levaste*, ye rose, &c.  
*Eglino si levarono*, they rose, &c.

*Preterperfect.*

- S. *Io mi sono levato*, I am risen.  
*Tu ti sei levato*, thou art risen.  
*Egli s'è levato*, he is risen.  
P. *Noi ci siamo levati*, we are risen.  
*Voi vi siete levati*, ye are risen.  
*Eglino si sono levati*, they are risen.

*First Pluperfect.*

- S. *Io m'ero levato*, I was risen.  
*Tu t'eri levato*, thou wast risen.  
*Egli s'era levato*, he was risen.  
P. *Noi c'eramo levati*, we were risen.  
*Voi v'erate levati*, ye were risen.  
*Eglino s'erano levati*, they were risen.

*Second Pluperfect.*

- S. *Io mi fui levato*, I was risen.  
*Tu ti fosti levato*, thou wast risen.  
*Egli si fu levato*, he was risen.

P. *Noi*

- P. *Noi ci fummo levati*, we were risen.  
*Voi vi foste levati*, ye were risen.  
*Eglino si furono levati*, they were risen.

*Future.*

- S. *Io mi leverò*, I shall, or will rise.  
*Tu ti leverai*, thou shalt, or wilt rise.  
*Egli si leverà*, he shall, or will rise.  
P. *Noi ci leveremo*, we shall, or will rise.  
*Voi vi leverete*, ye shall, or will rise.  
*Eglino si leveranno*, they shall, or will rise.

*Imperative,*

- S. *Levati*, rise thou. *Levisti*, let him rise.  
P. *Leviamoci*, let us rise. *Levatevi*, rise ye.  
*Levinfi*, let them rise.

*Conjunctive Present.*

- S. *Cb' io mi levi*, that I rise.  
*Che tu ti levi*, that thou risest.  
*Cb' egli si levi*, that he riseth.  
P. *Che noi ci leviamo*, that we rise.  
*Che voi vi leviate*, that ye rise.  
*Cb' eglino si levino*, that they rise.

*First Imperfect.*

- S. *Io mi leverei*, I should rise.  
*Tu ti leveresti*, thou shouldst rise.  
*Egli si leverebbe*, he should rise.

P. *Noi*

- P. *Noi ci leveremmo*, we should rise.  
*Voi vi levereste*, ye should rise.  
*Eglino si leverebbero*, they should rise.

*Second Imperfect.*

- S. *Io mi levassi*, I should rise.  
*Tu ti levassi*, thou shouldst rise.  
*Egli si levasse*, he should rise.  
P. *Noi ci levassimo*, we should rise.  
*Voi vi levaste*, ye should rise.  
*Eglino si levassero*, they should rise.

*Preterperfect.*

- S. *Io mi sia levato*, I be risen.  
*Tu ti sia levato*, thou be risen.  
*Egli si sia levato*, he be risen.  
P. *Noi ci siamo levati*, we be risen.  
*Voi vi siate levati*, ye be risen.  
*Eglino si siano levati*, they be risen.

*First Pluperfect.*

- S. *Io mi sarei levato*, I were risen.  
*Tu ti saresti levato*, thou wert risen.  
*Egli si sarebbe levato*, he were risen.  
P. *Noi ci saremmo levati*, we were risen.  
*Voi vi sareste levati*, ye were risen.  
*Eglino si sarebbero levati*, they were risen.

Se-

*Second Pluperfect.*

- S.** *Io mi fossi levato*, I were risen.  
*Tu ti fossi levato*, thou wert risen.  
*Egli si fosse levato*, he were risen.  
**P.** *Noi ci fossimo levati*, we were risen.  
*Voi vi foste levati*, ye were risen.  
*Eglino si fossero levati*, they were risen.

*Future.*

- S.** *Io mi sarò levato*, I shall be risen.  
*Tu ti sarai levato*, thou shalt be risen.  
*Egli si sarà levato*, he shall be risen.  
**P.** *Noi ci saremo levati*, we shall be risen.  
*Voi vi sarete levati*, ye shall be risen.  
*Eglino si saranno levati*, they shall be risen.

**Infinitive Present.** *Levarsi*, to rise.

**Preterperfect.** *Essersi levato*, to be risen.

**Gerund.** *Levandosi*, rising.

**Participle.** *Levatosi*, risen.

*Note*, that in these Verbs, as in the Passive, the Participle varies according to the Difference of Gender and Number: So we say, *mi sono levato*, for the masculine Singular; *mi sono levata*, for the Feminine; *ci siamo levati*, for the masculine Plural; and *ci siamo levate*, for the Feminine.

*Of Verbs Irregular.*

Irregular Verbs, are those whose Conjugation does not follow the general Rule, either by different

k

rent

rent Terminations , or by want of some of their Moods, Tenses, or Persons.

*Note*, that the Verbs are irregular, some in the Present, some in the Definites, and some in the Future and Participle.

*Note*, also, that when a Verb is irregular in the Present of the Indicative Mood, it is also irregular in the Present of the Imperative and Conjunctive.

The Present of the Conjunctive is easily formed in the Verbs of the second and third Conjugation : For , 'tis a general Rule , that all the first Persons singular of the Indicative Mood in the Verbs, both regular and irregular, do always terminate in *o* ; by changing this *o* into *a* , you'll form the Present of the Conjunctive; as, *vedere* , *vedo* , *veda* ; *tenero* , *tengo* , *tenga* ; *dormire* , *dormo* , *dorma* ; *uscire* , *esco* , *esca*.

The first and second Persons Plural of the Present are never irregular.

*Irregular Verbs of the first Conjugation.*

This Conjugation has only four irregular Verbs, viz. *andare* , to go ; *dare* , to give ; *fare* , to do ; *stare* , to be, or stand.

*Note*, that when the Verbs are irregular in the Present of the Indicative Mood, they are also irregular in the Present of the Imperative and Conjunctive.

1. *An-*

1. *Andare*, to go.

*This Verb is only irregular in the Present.*

*Indicative Present.*

S. *Io vo*, or *vado*, I go.

*Tu vai*, thou goest.

*Egli va*, he goeth.

P. *Noi andiamo*, we go.

*Voi andate*, ye go.

*Eglino vanno*, they go.

*Imperfect.*

S. *Io andavo*, I did go, or I was going.

*Tu andavi*, thou didst go, &c.

*Egli andava*, he did go, &c.

P. *Noi andavamo*, we did go, &c.

*Voi andavate*, ye did go, &c.

*Eglino andavano*, they did go, &c.

*Perfect Definite.*

S. *Io andai*, I went.

*Tu andasti*, thou wentest.

*Egli andò*, he went.

P. *Noi andammo*, we went.

*Voi andaste*, ye went.

*Eglino andarono*, they went,

k 2

Pre-

*Preterperfect.*

- S. *Io sono andato*, I am gone.  
*Tu sei andato*, thou art gone.  
*Egli è andato*, he is gone.
- P. *Noi siamo andati*, we are gone.  
*Voi sete andati*, ye are gone.  
*Eglino sono andati*, they are gone.

*First Pluperfect.*

- S. *Io ero andato*, I was gone.  
*Tu eri andato*, thou wast gone.  
*Egli era andato*, he was gone.
- P. *Noi eramo andati*, we were gone.  
*Voi erate andati*, ye were gone.  
*Eglino erano andati*, they were gone.

*Second Pluperfect.*

- S. *Io fui andato*, I was gone.  
*Tu fosti andato*, thou wast gone.  
*Egli fu' andato*, he was gone.
- P. *Noi fummo andati*, we were gone.  
*Voi foste andati*, ye were gone.  
*Eglino furono andati*, they were gone.

*Future.*

- S. *Io anderò*, I shall, or will go.  
*Tu anderai*, thou shalt, or wilt go.  
*Egli anderà*, he shall, or will go.
- P. *Noi*

- P. *Noi anderemo*, we shall, or will go.  
*Voi anderete*, ye shall or will go.  
*Eglino anderanno*, they shall or will go.

*Imperative.*

- S. *Va*, go thou.  
*Vada*, let him go.  
P. *Andiamo*, let us go.  
*Andate*, go ye.  
*Vadano*, let them go.

*Conjunctive Present.*

- S. *Che io vada*, that I go.  
*Che tu vada*, that thou goest.  
*Che egli vada*, that he goeth.  
P. *Che noi andiamo*, that we go.  
*Che voi andiate*, that ye go.  
*Che eglino vadano*, that they go.

*First Imperfect.*

- S. *Io anderei*, I should, would, or could go.  
*Tu anderesti*, thou should'st, &c. go.  
*Egli anderebbe*, he should, &c. go.  
P. *Noi anderemmo*, we should, &c. go.  
*Voi andereste*, ye should, &c. go.  
*Eglino anderebbero*, they should, &c. go.

*Second Imperfect.*

- S. *Che io andassi*, that I should, would, or could go.  
*Che tu andassi*, that thou shouldst, &c. go.  
*Che egli andasse*, that he should, &c. go.  
P. *Che noi andassimo*, that we should, &c. go.  
*Che voi andaste*, that ye should, &c. go.  
*Che eglino andassero*, that they should, &c. go.

*Preterperfect.*

- S. *Che io sia andato*, that I be gone.  
*Che tu sia andato*, that thou be gone.  
*Che egli sia andato*, that he be gone.  
P. *Che noi siamo andati*, that we be gone.  
*Che voi siate andati*, that ye be gone.  
*Che eglino siano andati*, that they be gone.

*First Pluperfect.*

- S. *Io sarei andato*, I should, would, or could be gone.  
*Tu saresti andato*, thou shouldst, &c. be gone,  
*Egli sarebbe andato*, he should, &c. be gone,  
P. *Noi saremmo andati*, we should, &c. be gone.  
*Voi sareste andati*, ye should, &c. be gone.  
*Eglino sarebbero andati*, they should, &c. be gone,

*Second Pluperfect.*

- S. *Che io fossi andato*, that I were gone.  
*Che tu fessi andato*, that thou wert gone.  
*Che egli fosse andato*, that he were gone.  
P. *Che*

- P.** *Che noi fossimo andati*, that we were gone.  
*Che voi foste andati*, that ye were gone.  
*Che eglino fossero andati*, that they were gone.

*Future.*

- S.** *Io sarò andato*, I shall be gone.  
*Tu sarai andato*, thou shalt be gone.  
*Egli sarà andato*, he shall be gone.  
**P.** *Noi saremo andati*, we shall be gone.  
*Voi sarete andati*, ye shall be gone.  
*Eglino saranno andati*, they shall be gone.

*Infinitive Present.*

*Andare*, to go.

*Preterperfect.*

*Essere andato*, to be gone.

*Participle,*

*Andato*, gone.

*Gerund.*

*Andando*, going.

*Essendo andato*, being gone.

*Conjugation of the Verb Dare, to give.*

*Indicative Present.*

This Verb is irregular in the Present and Definite Tenses.

- S.** *Io do*, I give.  
*Tu dai*, thou give.  
*Egli dà*, he giveth.

k 4

**P.** *Noi*

- P. *Noi diamo*, we give.  
*Voi date*, ye give.  
*Eglino danno*, they give.

*Imperfect.*

- S. *Io davo*, I did give.  
*Tu davi*, thou didst give.  
*Egli dava*, he did give.  
P. *Noi davamo*, we did give.  
*Voi davate*, ye did give.  
*Eglino davano*, they did give.

*Perfect Definite.*

- S. *Io diedi* or *detti*, I gave.  
*Tu desti*, thou gavest.  
*Egli diede*, *diè* or *dette*, he gave.  
P. *Noi demmo*, we gave.  
*Voi deste*, ye gave.  
*Eglino diedero* or *dettero*, they gave.

*Preterperfect.*

- Io ho dato*, I have given.

*First Pluperfect.*

- Io avevo dato*, I had given.

*Second Pluperfect.*

- Io ebbi dato*, I had given.

Fu-

*Future.*

- S. *Io darò*, I shall or will give.  
*Tu darai*, thou shalt or wilt give.  
*Egli darà*, he shall or will give.  
P. *Noi daremo*, we shall or will give.  
*Voi darete*, ye shall or will give.  
*Eglino daranno*, they shall or will give.

*Imperative.*

- S. *Dà*, give thou. *Dia*, let him give.  
P. *Diamo*, let us give. *Date*, give ye.  
*Diano*, let them give.

*Conjunctive Present.*

- S. *Che io dia*, that I give or may give.  
*Che tu dia*, that thou givest, &c.  
*Che egli dia*, that he giveth, &c.  
P. *Che noi diamo*, that we give, &c.  
*Che voi diate*, that ye give, &c.  
*Che eglino diano*, that they give, &c.

*First Imperfect.*

- S. *Io darei*, I should, would, or could give,  
*Tu daresti*, thou shouldest, &c. give,  
*Egli darebbe*, he should, &c. give,  
P. *Noi daremmo*, we should, &c. give,  
*Voi daresteste*, ye should, &c. give,  
*Eglino darebbero*, they should, &c. give.  
Se

*Second Imperfect.*

S. *Che io dessi*, that I should, would, or could give.

*Che tu dessi*, that thou shouldst, &c. give,

*Che egli desse*, that he should, &c. give,

P. *Che noi dessimo*, that we should, &c. give,

*Che voi deste*, that ye should, &c. give,

*Che eglino dessero*, that they should, &c. give,

Preterperfect. *Io abbia dato*, I have given.

First Pluperfect. *Io averei dato*, I should or would have given.

Second Pluperfect. *Io avessi dato*, I had given, &c.

Future. *Quando io averò dato*, when I shall have given.

Infinitive Present. *Dare*, to give.

Preterperfect. *Avere dato*, to have given.

Participle. *Dato*, given.

Gerund. *Dando*, giving.

*Avendo dato*, having given.

*Conjugation of the Verb Fare, to do.*

This Verb is irregular in the present, and definitive Tenses, and in the Participle.

*Indicative Present.*

S. *Io fo*, I do; or I make. *Tu fai*, thou doest.

*Egli fa*, he doeth.

P. *Noi facciamo*, we do. *Voi fate*, ye do.

*Eglino fanno*, they do.

Im-

*Imperfect.*

- S. *Io facevo*, I was doing.  
*Tu facevi*, thou wast doing.  
*Egli faceva*, he was doing.  
P. *Noi facevamo*, we were doing.  
*Voi facevate*, ye were doing.  
*Eglino facevano*, they were doing.

*Perfect Definite.*

- S. *Io feci*, I did. *Tu facesti*, thou didst.  
*Egli fece*, he did.  
P. *Noi facemmo*, we did. *Voi faceste*, ye did.  
*Eglino fecero*, they did.  
Preterperfect. S. *Io ho fatto*, I have done, &c.  
First Pluperfect. *Io avevo fatto*, I had done, &c.  
Second Pluperfect. *Io ebbi fatto*, I had done, &c.  
Future. *Io farò*, I shall, or will do, &c.

*Imperative.*

- S. *Fa*, do thou. *Faccia*, let him do.  
P. *Facciamo*, let us do. *Fate*, do ye.  
*Facciano*, let them do.

*Conjunctive Present.*

- S. *Che io faccia*, that I may do.  
*Che tu faccia*, that thou may'st do.  
*Che egli faccia*, that he may do.  
P. *Che noi facciamo*, that we may do.  
*Che voi facciate*, that ye may do.  
*Che eglino facciano*, that they may do.

First

First Imperfect. *Io farei*, &c. I should, would, or could do, &c.

Second Imperfect. *Io facesti*, &c. I should, or might do, &c.

Preterperfect. *Che io abbia fatto*, &c. that I have done, &c.

First Pluperfect. *Io avrei fatto*, &c. I should have done, &c.

Second Pluperfect. *Io avessi fatto*, &c. I had done, &c.

Future. *Io averò fatto*, &c. I shall have done, &c.

Infinitive Present, *Fare*, to do, or to make.

Preterperfect. *Avere fatto*, to have done.

Participle. *Fatto*, done, or made.

Gerund. *Facendo*, doing, or making.

*Avendo fatto*, having done, or made,

*Conjugation of the Verb Stare, to live, or to be.*

*Indicative Present.*

S. *Io sto*, I live, or I am, &c.

*Tu stai*, thou livest, &c.

*Egli stai*, he liveth, &c.

P. *Noi siamo*, we live, &c.

*Voi state*, ye live, &c.

*Eglino stanno*, they live, &c.

Imperfect. *Io stavo*, &c. I lived, or did live, &c.

*Perfect*

*Perfect Definite.*

**S.** *Io fetti*, I lived, or I was.

*Tu fetti*, thou livedst, &c.

*Egli fette*, he lived, &c.

**P.** *Noi stemmo*, we lived, &c.

*Voi steste*, ye lived, &c.

*Eglino stettero*, they lived, &c.

**Preterperfect.** *Io sono stato*, &c. I have lived,  
or I have been, &c.

**First Pluperfect.** *Io ero stato*, &c. I had lived,  
or I had been, &c.

**Second Pluperfect.** *Io fui stato*, &c. I lived, or  
I was, &c.

**Future.** *Io starò*, &c. I shall live, or I shall  
be, &c.

*Imperative.*

**S.** *Sta*, live thou, or be thou.

*Stia*, let him live, or let him be.

**P.** *Stiamo*, let us live, or let us be.

*State*, live ye, or be ye.

*Stiano*, let them live, or let them be.

*Conjunctive Present.*

**S.** *Che io stia*, that I live, or that I be.

*Che tu stia*, that thou livest, &c.

*Che egli stia*, that he liveth, &c.

**P.** *Che*

- P. *Che noi stiamo*, that we live, &c.  
*Che voi siate*, that ye live, &c.  
*Che eglino siano*, that they live, &c.

First Imperfect. *Io starei*, &c. I should live, or  
I should be, &c.

*Second Imperfect.*

- S. *Io stessi*, I lived, or I was.  
*Tu stessi*, thou livedst, &c.  
*Egli stesse*, &c. he lived, &c.

- P. *Noi stessimo*, we lived, &c.  
*Voi steste*, ye lived, &c.

*Eglino stessero*, they lived, &c.

Preterpluperfect. *Che io sia stato*, &c. that I have  
lived, &c.

First Pluperfect. *Io sarei stato*, &c. I should have  
lived, or I should have been, &c.

Second Pluperfect. *Io fossi stato*, &c. I had lived,  
or I had been, &c.

Future. *Io sarò stato*, &c. I shall have lived, or  
I shall have been, &c.

Infinitive. *Stare*, to live, or to be.

Participle Present. *Stato*, lived, or been.

Preterperfect. *Essere stato*, to have lived, or to  
have been.

Gerund. *Stando*, living, or being.

*Essendo stato*, having lived, or having been.

*Obser-*

*Observations upon the four irregular Verbs in are,*

In these four Verbs, the second Person of the present of the Indicative Mood terminates in *ai*, *dai*, *fai*, *vai*, *stai*; and the third Plural in *anno*, *danno*, *fanno*, *vanno*, *stanno*; and not in *ano*, as in the other Verbs of the first Conjugation.

The future doth not terminate in *erò*, but in *arò*; therefore you must say *darò*, *farò*, *starò*; and not *derò*, *ferò*, *sterò*; except *andare*, that makes *anderò*.

*Stare* and *Dare* make *deffi*, and *stessi*, in the Conjunctive, and not *dassi*, and *stassi*.

The third Persons singular of these four Verbs end in *a*, in the Present of the Conjunctive, *dia*, *stia*, *vada*, *faccia*; whereas the other Verbs of the first Conjugation end in *i*.

Although the Verb *Fare*, and its Compounds *Disfare*, to undo; *risfare*, to do again; *contrasfare*, to counterfeit; *soprasfare*, to outdo, &c. are placed among the irregular Verbs of the first Conjugation, they are nevertheless of the second Conjugation; since they are nothing else but an Abbreviation of the Verb *Facere*: one may see it by the Syllable *ce*, which is in almost all its Tenses; as *facevo*, *faceffi*; which Syllables are taken out of the Latin Verb *Facere*. Moreover, if they were of the first Conjugation, the Imperfect ought to be *faciava*, or *fava*, and not *faceva*.

The

The Participle *fatto*, confirms still what I have said ; for it is certain that all the Participles of the first Conjugation are terminated in *ato*, and not in *atto*.

Antiently the Verb *Andare* was used as a regular Verb; saying, *io ando*, *tu andi*, &c.

*Or vo'che sappi innanzi, che tu andi*. Dante. Inf. 4.

But in Process of Time, these Tenses are grown obsolete; and we have taken them of the *Latin* Verb *Vadere*.

We find very seldom in Prose *vado*, instead of *vo*; but 'tis very frequent in Verse.

*Note*, That after the Verb *Andare*, and other Verbs of Motion, we always put the Particle *a* or *ad* before an Infinitive; ex. *andate a vedere*, go to see; *andiamo a dormire*, let us go to sleep. *Andare*, before some Gerunds, expresses the Action with more Grace, and with more Strength, than the Verb of the Gerund would; ex. *Io vo cercando*, *io vo cogliendo*, I am looking, I am gathering, are more emphatick than *Io cerco*, *io coglio*, I look for, I gather. We use the Verb *stare*, to mark an Action of Rest, by putting the Verb that follows in the Gerund, or in the Infinitive, with the Particles *a* or *ad*; ex. *scrivo*, *sto scrivendo*, or *sto a scrivere*, I write, or I am writing; *dorme*, *sta dormendo*, or *sta a dormire*, he sleeps, or he is sleeping.

of

*Of the irregular Verbs of the Second Conjugation.*

The greatest part of the Verbs of the Second Conjugation are irregular; therefore I think that is better to learn them by Practice, than to get them by heart; since I have taken a particular Care to mark them in my Dictionary, and in which Tenses they are irregular: However, I shall produce here some that are more frequent in Conversation.

*Note*, That the greatest Difficulty of these Verbs consists in the Definite Tense, and in the Participle, since all the other Tenses are regular; and notwithstanding they are irregular, insomuch that they have no Affinity one with another in their Terminations, yet they are regular among themselves, since their Irregularity lies in the same Persons, viz. in the first, third Singular, and third Plural; the second Person singular, the first and second plural are always regular; that is to say, they are formed of the infinitive Mood; ex; *vedere*, to see, is irregular in the Definite Tense, and makes *vidi*, I saw, *vedesti*, thou sawest, *vide*, he saw, *vedemmo*, we saw, *vedeste*, ye saw, *videro*, they saw. By the foregoing Example you may see, that *vidi*, *vide*, *videro*, are irregular, and *vedesti*, *vedemmo*, and *vedeste*, are regular; *piacqui*, I pleased, *piacque*, he pleased, *piacquero*, they pleased,

fed, are irregular; *piaceſti*, thou pleaſed'ſt, *piacemmo*, we pleaſed, *piaceſte*, ye pleaſed, are regular: The ſame Rule is to be obſerved for the other irregular Verbs, that have different Terminations in the Definite Tenſe.

*Note* alſo, That of the irregular Verbs in *ere*, Part have the Penultima, or the laſt Syllable but one, long; as *cadere*, to fall; Part have their Termination ſhort; as *ſcrivere*, to write. There are only two and twenty Verbs that have the Infinitive in *ere* long, viz. theſe following.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Preſ.</i>	<i>Defin.</i>	<i>Part.</i>
<i>Cadere</i> , to fall.	<i>cado</i> ,	<i>caddi</i> ,	<i>caduto</i> .
<i>Calere</i> , to care.	an imperſonal Verb.		
<i>Dovere</i> , to owe.	<i>devo</i> ,	<i>dovei</i>	<i>dovuto</i>
<i>Capere</i> , to hold.	a Verb obſolete.		
<i>Dolere</i> , to pain.	<i>doglio</i> ,	<i>dolſi</i> ,	<i>doluto</i> .
<i>Giacere</i> , to lie down.	<i>giaccio</i> ,	<i>giacqui</i> ,	<i>giaciuto</i> .
<i>Godere</i> , to rejoice,	<i>godo</i> ,	<i>godei</i> ,	<i>goduto</i> .
<i>Avere</i> , to have.	<i>ho</i> ,	<i>ebbi</i> ,	<i>avuto</i> .
<i>Parere</i> , to ſeem.	<i>pajo</i> ,	<i>parvi</i> ,	<i>parſo</i> .
<i>Piacere</i> , to pleaſe.	<i>piaccio</i> ,	<i>piacqui</i> ,	<i>piaciuto</i> .
<i>Persuadere</i> , to perſuade.	<i>perſuado</i> ,	<i>perſuaſi</i> ,	<i>perſuaſo</i> .
<i>Potere</i> , to be able.	<i>poſſo</i> ,	<i>potei</i> ,	<i>potuto</i> .
<i>Rimanere</i> , to remain.	<i>rimango</i> ,	<i>rimaſi</i> ,	<i>rimaſo</i> .
<i>Sapere</i> , to know.	<i>ſo</i> ,	<i>ſeppi</i> ,	<i>ſaputo</i> .
<i>Sedere</i> , to ſit.	<i>ſedo</i> ,	<i>ſedei</i> ,	<i>ſeduto</i> .
<i>Solere</i> , to be wont,	<i>foglio</i> ,		<i>ſolito</i> .
<i>Tacere</i> , to be ſilent.	<i>taccio</i> ,	<i>tacqui</i> ,	<i>taciuto</i> .
<i>Tenere</i> , to hold,	<i>tengo</i> ,	<i>tenni</i> ,	<i>tenuto</i> .

*Temere*

<i>Temere</i> , to fear.	temo,	temei,	temuto.
<i>Valere</i> , to signify.	vaglio,	valsi,	valuto.
<i>Vedere</i> , to see.	vedo,	vidi,	veduto.
<i>Volere</i> , to be willing.	voglio,	volli,	voluto.

Of these two and twenty Verbs, three are regular, *viz. temere, godere, sedere*, and are conjugated like *credere*.

The others, some are irregular in the Present, some in the Definite and Future, and some in the Participle.

*Of the Conjugation of Verbs in ere long.*

*Piacere*, to please.

*Indicative Present.*

S. *Io piaccio*. I please.

*Tu piaci*, thou pleasest.

*Egli piace*, he pleaseth.

P. *Noi piacciamo*, we please.

*Voi piacete*, ye please.

*Eglino piacciono*, they please.

Imperfect. *Io piacevo, &c.* I pleased, or I did please, &c.

*Definite.*

S. *Io piacqui*, I pleased.

*Tu piacesti*, thou pleasedst.

*Egli piacque*, he pleased.

1 2

P. *Noi*

P. *Noi piacemmo*, we pleased.  
*Voi piaceste*, ye pleased.  
*Eglino piacquero*, they pleased.

Preterperfect. *Io ho piaciuto*, I have pleased.  
 First Pluperfect. *Io avevo* } *Piaciuto*, I had plea-  
 Second Pluperfect. *Io ebbi* } fed.  
 Future. *Io piacerò* shall please, &c.

*Imperative.*

S. *Piaci*, please thou.  
*Piaccia*, let him please.  
 P. *Piacciamo*, let us please.  
*Piacete*, please ye.  
*Piacciano*, let them please.

*Conjunctive Present.*

S. *Che io piaccia*, that I please, &c.  
*Che tu piaccia*, that thou pleasest.  
*Che egli piaccia*, that he pleaseth.  
 P. *Che noi piacciamo*, that we please.  
*Che voi piacciate*, that ye please.  
*Che eglino piacciano*, that they please.  
 First Imperfect. *Io piacerei*, I should please, &c.  
 Second Imperfect. *Io piaceffi*, I pleased, &c.  
 Preterperfect. *Io abbia piaciuto*, I have pleased, &c.  
 First Pluperfect. *Io averei* } *Piaciuto*, I had plea-  
 Second Pluperfect. *Io avessi* } fed, &c.  
 Futu-

Future. *Io averò piaciuto*, I shall have pleased,  
*&c.*

Infinitive Present. *Piacere*, to please.

Preterperfect. *Avere piaciuto*, to have pleased.

Participle. *Piaciuto*, pleased.

Gerund. *Piacendo*, pleasing.

After the same manner conjugate *Giacere*, to lie down; *Tacere*, to be silent.

*Note*, That in these three Verbs, where the Letter *c* comes before the two Vowels, the *c* is to be doubled; as *piaccio*, *piaccia*, *piacciamo*, *taccio*, *taccia*, *tacciamo*.

*Cadere*, to fall.

*Indicative Present.*

S. *Io cado*, I fall.

*Tu cadi*, thou fallest.

*Egli cade*, he falleth.

P. *Noi cadiamo*, we fall.

*Voi cadete*, ye fall.

*Eglino cadono*, they fall.

Imperfect. *Io Cadevo*, I fell, or I did fall, *&c.*

*Definite.*

S. *Io caddi*, I fell.

*Tu cadesti*, thou fellest.

*Egli cadde*, he fell.

P. *Noi cademmo*, we fell.

*Voi cadeste*, ye fell.

*Eglino caddero*, they fell.

1 3

Preter-

Preterperfect. *Io sono caduto*, &c. I have fallen,  
&c.

First Pluperfect. *Io ero* } *Caduto*, I had fal-  
Second Pluperfect. *Io fui* } len, &c.

Future. *Io caderò*, or *cadrò*, I shall fall, &c.

*Imperative.*

S. *Cadi*, fall thou.

*Cada*, let him fall.

P. *Cadiamo*, let us fall.

*Cadete*, fall ye.

*Cadano*, let them fall.

*Conjunctive Present.*

S. *Che io cada*, that I fall, &c.

*Che tu cada*, that thou fallest, &c.

*Che egli cada*, that he falleth, &c.

P. *Che noi cadiamo*, that we fall, &c.

*Che voi cadiate*, that ye fall, &c.

*Che eglino cadano*, that they fall, &c.

First Pluperfect. *Io caderei*, I should fall, &c.

Second Imperfect. *Io cadeffi* I fell, or I should fall.

Preterperfect. *Io sia caduto*, I have fallen.

First Imperfect. *Io sarei* } *Caduto*, I had fallen.  
Second Pluperfect. *Io fossi* }

Future. *Io sarò caduto*, I shall have fallen.

Infinitive Present. *Cadere*, to fall.

Preterperfect. *Essere caduto*, to have fallen.

Participle. *Caduto*, fallen.

Gerund. *Cadendo*, falling.

*Volere*,

*Volere*, to be willing.

*Indicative Present.*

- S. *Io voglio*, I am  
*Tu vuoi*, thou art  
*Egli vuole*, he is } willing.
- P. *Noi vogliamo*, we are  
*Voi volete*, ye are  
*Eglino vogliono*, they are } willing.

Imperfect. *Io volevo*, &c. I was willing, &c.

*Definite.*

- S. *Io volli*, I was  
*Tu volesti*, thou wast  
*Egli volle*, he was } willing.
- P. *Noi volemmo*, we were  
*Voi voleste*, ye were  
*Eglino vollero*, they were } willing.

Preterfect. *Io ho voluto*, &c. I have been willing, &c.

First Pluperfect. *Io avevo voluto*, I had been willing.  
 Second Pluperfect. *Io ebbi voluto*, I had been willing.

*Future.*

- S. *Io vorrò*, I shall  
*Tu vorrai*, thou shalt  
*Egli vorrà*, he shall } be willing.
- P. *Noi vorremo*, we shall  
*Voi vorrete*, ye shall  
*Eglino vorranno*, they shall } be willing.

1 4

Con-

*Conjunctive Present.*

S. <i>Che io voglia</i> , that I	} be willing.
<i>Che tu voglia</i> , that thou	
<i>Che egli voglia</i> , that he	
P. <i>Che noi vogliamo</i> , that we	
<i>Che voi vogliate</i> , that ye	
<i>Che eglino vogliano</i> , that they	

First Imperfect. *Io vorrei*, I should be willing, &c.

Second Imperfect. *Io voleffi*, I would, or I should be willing, &c.

Preterperfect. *Io abbia voluto*, I have been willing, &c.

First Pluperfect. *Io averei* } *voluto*, I had been

Second Pluperfect. *Io avessi* } willing, &c.

Future. *Io averò voluto*, I shall have been willing, &c.

Infinitive Present. *Volere*, to be willing.

Preterperfect. *Avere voluto*, to have been willing.

Participle. *Voluto*, been willing.

Gerund. *Volendo*, being willing.

*Dolere*, to grieve.

*Indicative Present.*

S. *Io mi dolgo*, or *doglio*, I grieve.

*Tu ti duoli*, thou grieveſt.

*Egli ſi duole*, he grieveth.

P. *Noi*

P. *Noi ci dogliamo*, we grieve.

*Voi vi dolete*, ye grieve.

*Eglio si dolgono*, or *dogliono*, they grieve.

Imperfect. *Io mi dolevo*, I grieved, or did grieve.

*Definite.*

S. *Io mi dolfi*, I grieved.

*Tu ti dolesti*, thou grievedst.

*Egli si dolse*, he grieved.

P. *Noi ci dolemmo*, we grieved.

*Voi vi dolesti*, ye grieved.

*Eglio si dolsero*, they grieved.

Preterperfect. *Io mi sono doluto*, I have grieved.

First Pluperfect, *Io mi ero* } *Doluto*, I had

Second Pluperfect. *Io mi fui* } grieved.

*Future.*

S. *Io mi dorrò*, I shall or will

*Tu ti dorrai*, thou shalt, &c.

*Egli si dorrà*, he shall, &c.

P. *Noi ci dorremo*, we shall, &c.

*Voi vi dorrete*, ye shall, &c.

*Eglio si dorranno*, they shall, &c. }

grieve.

*Imperative.*

S. *Duoliti*, or *Duoliti*, grieve thou.

*Dolgasi*, let him grieve.

P. *Dogliamoci*, let us grieve.

*Doletevi*, grieve ye.

*Dolganfi*, let them grieve.

*Con-*

*Conjunctive Present.*

- S. *Che io mi dolga*, that I grieve.  
*Che tu ti dolga*, that thou grieveſt.  
*Che egli ſi dolga*, that he grieveſth.
- P. *Che noi ci dogliamo*, that we  
*Che voi vi dogliate*, that ye  
*Che eglino ſi dolgano*, that they } grieve.

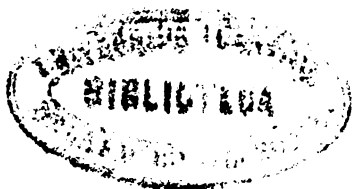
Fiſt Imperfect. *Io mi dorrei*, I ſhould grieve, &c.  
 Second Imperfect. *Io mi doleſſi*, I grieved, &c.  
 Preterperfect. *Io mi ſia doluto*, I have grieved, &c.  
 Fiſt Pluperfect. *Io mi ſarei* } *Doluto*, I had  
 Second Pluperfect. *Io mi foſſi* } grieved.  
 Future. *Io mi ſarò doluto*, I ſhall have grieved.

*Infinitive Present.*

*Dolerſi*, to grieve.  
 Preterperfect. *Eſſerſi doluto*, to have grieved.  
 Participle. *Doluto*, grieved.  
 Gerund. *Dolendofi*, grieving.

*Note*, That the Verbs whoſe Infinitive end in *lere*, always take a *g* before the *l*, and after the *l* an *i*, in thoſe Tenſes where the Letters *o* and *a* follow the *l*; as, *voglio*, *vogliono*, *vogliia*; *ſoglio*, *ſogliono*, *ſogliia*: *Dolete* makes *dolgo* and *doglio*. And in the future and fiſt Imperfect, they change the *le* into *r*; as, *volere*, *vorrà*, *vorrei*; *dolere*, *dorrà*, *dorrei*.

So-



*Solere*, to be wont.

*Indicative Present.*

S. *Io foglio*, I am wont.

*Tu suoli*, thou art wont.

*Egli suole*, he is wont.

P. *Noi fogliamo*, we are wont.

*Voi solete*, ye are wont.

*Eglino sogliono*, they are wont.

Imperfect. *Io solevo*, I was wont, &c.

This Verb has no definite Tense, nor future.

*Conjunctive Present.*

S. *Che io foglia*, that I be

*Che tu foglia*, thou be

*Che egli foglia*, he be

P. *Che noi fogliamo*, we be

*Che voi fogliate*, ye be

*Che eglino sogliano*, they be

} wont.

Second Imperfect. *Io soleffi*, I was wont, &c.

Infinitive Present. *Solere*, to be wont.

Preterperfect. *Essere solito*, to be wont.

Participle. *Solito*, wont.

Gerund. *Solendo*, or *essendo solito*, being wont.

*Tenere*, to hold.

*Indicative Present.*

S. *Io tengo*, I hold. *Tu tieni*, thou holdest.

*Egli tiene*, he holdeth.

P. *Noi*

P. *Noi teniamo*, we hold.  
*Voi tenete*, ye hold.  
*Eglino tengono*, they hold.  
 Imperfect. *Io tenevo*, I held.

*Definite.*

S. *Io tenni*, I held. *Tu tenești*, thou heldest.  
*Egli tenne*, he held.  
 P. *Noi tenemmo*, we held. *Voi teneste*, ye held.  
*Eglino tennero*, they held.

*Future.*

S. <i>Io terrò</i> , I shall	} hold.
<i>Tu terrai</i> , thou shalt	
<i>Egli terrà</i> , he shall	
P. <i>Noi terremo</i> , we shall	
<i>Voi terrete</i> , ye shall	
<i>Eglino terranno</i> , they shall	

*Imperative.*

S. *Tieni*, hold thou. *Tenga*, let him hold.  
 P. *Teniamo*, let us hold. *Tenete*, hold ye.  
*Tengano*, let them hold.

*Conjunctive Present.*

S. <i>Che io tenga</i> , that I	} hold.
<i>Che tu tenga</i> , that thou	
<i>Che egli tenga</i> , that he	
P. <i>Che noi teniamo</i> , that we	
<i>Che voi teniate</i> , that ye	
<i>Che egli tengano</i> , that they	

*First*

*First Imperfect.*

- |   |         |
|---|---------|
| S. <i>Io terrei</i> , I should          | } hold. |
| <i>Tu terresti</i> , thou shouldst, &c. |         |
| <i>Egli terrebbe</i> , he should, &c.   |         |
| P. <i>Noi terremmo</i> , we should, &c. |         |
| <i>Voi terreste</i> , ye should, &c.    |         |
| <i>Eglino terrebbero</i> , they should. |         |

*Second Imperfect.*

- |                                   |         |
|-----------------------------------|---------|
| S. <i>Io teneffi</i> , I held.    | } held. |
| <i>Tu tenessi</i> , thou heldest. |         |
| <i>Egli tenesse</i> , he          |         |
| P. <i>Noi tenessimo</i> , we      |         |
| <i>Voi teneste</i> , ye           |         |
| <i>Eglino tenessero</i> , they    |         |
- Infinitive Present. *Tenere*, to hold.  
 Preterperfect. *Avere tenuto*, to have held.  
 Participle. *Tenuto*, held.  
 Gerund. *Tenendo*, holding.

*Sapere*, to know.

*Indicative Present.*

- S. *Io so*, I know.  
*Tu sai*, thou knowest.  
*Egli sa*, he knoweth.  
 P. *Noi sappiamo*, we know.  
*Voi sapete*, ye know.  
*Eglino fanno*, they know.  
 Imperfect. *Io sapevo*, I did know, &c

*De-*

*Definite.*

- S. *Io seppi*, I knew.  
*Tu sapesti*, thou knewest.  
*Egli seppe*, he knew.
- P. *Noi sapemmo*, we knew.  
*Voi sapeste*, ye knew.  
*Eglino seppero*, they knew.

*Future.*

- S. *Io saprò*, I shall,  
*Tu saprai*, thou shalt  
*Egli saprà*, he shall
- P. *Noi sapremo*, we shall  
*Voi saprete*, ye shall  
*Eglino sapranno*, they shall
- } know.

*Imperative.*

- S. *Sappi*, Know thou.  
*Sappia*, let him know.
- P. *Sappiamo*, let us know.  
*Sappiate*, know ye.  
*Sappiano*, let them know.

*Conjunctive Present.*

- S. *Che io sappia*, that I know.  
*Che tu sappia*, that thou knowest.  
*Che egli sappia*, that he knoweth.
- P. *Che noi sappiamo*, that he  
*Che voi sappiate*, that ye  
*Che eglino sappiano*, that they
- } know.

*First*

*First Imperfect.*

- |  |   |       |
|--|---|-------|
| S. <i>Io saprei</i> , I should         | } | know. |
| <i>Tu sapresti</i> , thou shouldest    |   |       |
| <i>Egli saprebbe</i> , he should       |   |       |
| P. <i>Noi sapremmo</i> , we should     |   |       |
| <i>Voi sapreste</i> , ye should        |   |       |
| <i>Eglino saprebbero</i> , they should |   |       |

*Second Imperfect.*

- |                                      |   |       |
|--------------------------------------|---|-------|
| S. <i>Io sapeffi</i> , I might       | } | know. |
| <i>Tu sapeffi</i> , thou mightst     |   |       |
| <i>Egli sapeffe</i> , he might       |   |       |
| P. <i>Noi sapeffimo</i> , we might   |   |       |
| <i>Voi sapeste</i> , ye might        |   |       |
| <i>Eglino sapeffero</i> , they might |   |       |

Infinitive Present. *Sapere*, to know.

Preterperfect. *Avere saputo*, to have known.

Participle. *Saputo*, known.

Gerund. *Sapendo*, knowing.

*Potere*, to be able.

*Indicative Present.*

- |   |   |       |
|---|---|-------|
| S. <i>Io posso</i> , I am                           | } | able. |
| <i>Tu puoi</i> , thou art                           |   |       |
| <i>Egli può</i> , he is                             |   |       |
| P. <i>Noi possiamo</i> , or <i>potiamo</i> , we are |   |       |
| <i>Voi potete</i> , ye are                          |   |       |
| <i>Eglino possono</i> they are                      |   |       |
- Imperfect. *Io potevo*, I was able, &c.

*De-*

*Definite.*

- S. *Io potei*, or *potetti*, I could.  
*Tu potesti*, thou couldst.  
*Egli potè*, or *potette*, he  
P. *Noi potemmo*, we  
*Voi poteste*, ye  
*Eglino potettero*, or *poterono*, they } could.

Future. *Io potrò*, I shall be able, &c.

*Conjunctive Present.*

- S. *Che io possa*, that I can.  
*Che tu possa*, that thou canst.  
*Che egli possa*, that he  
P. *Che noi possiamo*, that we  
*Che voi possiate*, that ye  
*Che eglino possano*, that they } can.

*First Imperfect.*

- S. *Io potrei*, I could.  
*Tu potresti*, thou couldst.  
*Egli potrebbe*, he  
P. *Noi potremmo*, we  
*Voi potreste*, ye  
*Eglino potrebbero*, they } could.

Se-

*Second Imperfect.*

- S. *Io poteffi*, I could.  
*Tu poteffi*, thou couldst.  
*Egli potesse*, he  
P. *Noi poteffimo*, we  
*Voi potefte*, ye  
*Eglino poteffero*, they } could.

Infinitive Present. *Potere*, to be able.

Preterperfect. *Avere potuto*, to have been able.

Participle, *Potuto*, been able.

Gerund. *Potendo*, being able.

*Rimanere*, to remain.

*Indicative Present.*

- S. *Io rimango*, I remain.  
*Tu rimani*, thou remainest.  
*Egli rimane*, he remaineth.  
P. *Noi rimaniamo*, we  
*Voi rimanete*, ye  
*Eglino rimangono*, they } remain.

Imperfect. *Io rimanevo*, I remained, or did remain, &c.

*Definite.*

- S. *Io rimasi*, I remained.  
*Tu rimanesti*, thou remainedst.  
*Egli rimase*, he  
P. *Noi rimanemmo*, we  
*Voi rimaneste*, ye  
*Eglino rimasero*, they } remained.

m

Fu-

*Future.*

- |                                       |   |         |
|---------------------------------------|---|---------|
| S. <i>Io rimarrò</i> , I shall        | } | remain. |
| <i>Tu rimarrai</i> , thou shalt       |   |         |
| <i>Egli rimarrà</i> , he shall        |   |         |
| P. <i>Noi rimarremo</i> , we shall    |   |         |
| <i>Voi rimarrete</i> , ye shall       |   |         |
| <i>Eglino rimarranno</i> , they shall |   |         |

*Imperative.*

- S. *Rimani*, remain thou.  
*Rimanga*, let him remain.  
P. *Rimaniamo*, let us remain.  
*Rimanete*, remain ye.  
*Rimangano*, let them remain.

*Conjunctive Present.*

- |   |   |         |
|---|---|---------|
| S. <i>Che io rimanga</i> , that I       | } | remain. |
| <i>Che tu rimanga</i> , that thou       |   |         |
| <i>Che egli rimanga</i> , that he       |   |         |
| P. <i>Che noi rimaniamo</i> , that we   |   |         |
| <i>Che voi rimaniate</i> , that ye      |   |         |
| <i>Che eglino rimangano</i> , that they |   |         |

*First Imperfect.*

- |  |   |                |
|--|---|----------------|
| S. <i>Io rimarrei</i> , I should remain.     | } | should remain. |
| <i>Tu rimarresti</i> , thou shouldst remain. |   |                |
| <i>Egli rimarrebbe</i> , he                  |   |                |
| P. <i>Noi rimarremmo</i> , we                |   |                |
| <i>Voi rimarreste</i> , ye                   |   |                |
| <i>Eglino rimarrebbero</i> , they            |   |                |

*Second*

*Second Imperfect.*

- S. *Io rimanessi*, I remained.  
*Tu rimanessi*, thou remainedst.  
*Egli rimanesse*, he  
P. *Noi rimanessimo*, we  
*Voi rimaneste*, ye  
*Eglino rimanessero*, they } remained.

Infinitive Present. *Rimanere*, to remain.

Preterperfect. *Essere rimasto*, to have remained.

Participle. *Rimasto*, or *rimasto*, remained.

Gerund. *Rimanendo*, remaining.

*Parere*, to seem.

*Indicative Present.*

- S. *Io pajo*, I seem.  
*Tu pari*, thou seemest.  
*Egli pare*, he seemeth.  
P. *Noi pajamo*, we  
*Voi parete*, ye  
*Eglino pajono*, they } seem.

Imperfect. *Io parevo*, I seemed, or I did seem, &c.

*Definite.*

- S. *Io parvi*, I seemed.  
*Tu paresti*, thou seemedst.  
*Egli parve*, he  
P. *Noi paremmo*, we  
*Voi pareste*, ye  
*Eglino parvero*, they } seemed.

m z

*Future.*

*Future.*

- S. *Io parrò*, I will  
*Tu parrai*, thou wilt  
*Egli parrà*, he will  
P. *Noi parremo*, we will  
*Voi parrete*, ye will  
*Eglino parranno*, they will
- } seem.

*Conjunctive Present.*

- S. *Che io paga*, that I may  
*Che tu paga*, that thou may'st  
*Che egli paga*, that he  
P. *Che noi pajamo*, that we  
*Che voi pajate*, that ye  
*Che eglino pajano*, that they
- } seem.  
 } may seem.

*First Imperfect.*

- S. *Io parrei*, I should seem.  
*Tu parresti*, thou shouldest seem.  
*Egli parrebbe*, he should  
P. *Noi parremmo*, we should  
*Voi parreste*, ye should  
*Eglino parrebbero*, they should
- } seem.

*Second Imperfect.*

- S. *Io pareffi*, I seemed.  
*Tu pareffi*, thou seemedst.  
*Egli pareffe*, he  
P. *Noi pareffimo*, we  
*Voi pareste*, ye  
*Eglino pareffero*, they
- } seemed.

Infi-

# GRAMMAR. 131

Infinitive Present. *Parere*, to seem.

Preterperfect. *Esser parso*, to have seemed.

Participle. *Parso*, seemed.

Gerund. *Parendo*, seeming.

*Dovere*, to owe, or to be obliged.

## Indicative Present.

S. *Io devo*, or *debbo*, I owe.

*Tu devi*, thou owest.

*Egli deve*, he oweth.

P. *Noi dobbiamo*, we

*Voi dovete*, ye

*Eglino devono*, or *debbono*, they } owe.

Imperfect. *Io dovevo*, I owed, or I did owe.

Definite. *Io dovei*, or *dovetti*, I owed, &c.

Future. *Io doverò*, or *dovrò*, I shall owe.

## Conjunctive Present.

S. *Che io debba*, that I owe.

*Che tu debba*, that thou owest.

*Che egli debba*, that he oweth.

P. *Che noi dobbiamo*, that we

*Che voi dobbiate*, that ye

*Che eglino debbano*, that they } owe

First Imperfect. *Io doverei*, or *dovrei*, I should owe, &c.

Second Imperfect. *Io doversi*, I owed, &c.

Infinitive Present. *Dovere*, to owe.

Preterperfect. *Avere dovuto*, to have owed.

Participle. *Dovuto*, owed.

Gerund. *Dovendo*, owing.

*Note*, Verbs having the Infinitive in *nere*; where *o*, or *a*, would regularly follow the *n*, take *g* immediately after it; as, *rimanere*, makes *rimango*, *rimangono*, *rimanga*, *rimangano*; instead of *rimano*, &c. *Porre*, to put, *comporre*, to compose, follow the same Rule, since they are nothing else but an Abbreviation of *Ponere*, and *Componere*.

*Of the irregular Verbs in ere, short.*

Of these some few are irregular in the Present Tense, the most part in the Perfect, some in the Future, and almost all in the Participle.

The Perfect always ends in *si*, or *ssi*, the Participle in *so*, or *te*; but the Perfect Tenses following are excepted.

	<i>Pref.</i>	<i>Def.</i>	<i>Part.</i>
<i>Conoscere</i> , to know,	conosco,	conobbi,	conosciuto.
<i>Crescere</i> , to grow,	cresco,	crebbi,	cresciuto.
<i>Nascere</i> , to be born,	nasco,	nacqui,	nato.
<i>Nuocere</i> , to hurt,	nuoco,	nocqui,	nociuto.
<i>Rompere</i> , to break,	rompo,	ruppi,	rotto.

Although this Rule is sufficient to know all Definite Tenses of the Verbs in *ere*, short; whoever, for greater Facility, I shall give he-  
re

re an Alphabetical Table of the Terminations of their Infinitives, and of the Irregular Tenses form'd from them.

*Terminations of the Verbs in ere, short.*

	<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Def.</i>	<i>Part.</i>
1. In <i>cere</i> ; as, vincere, vinco,	vinfi,	vinto.	
2. In <i>dere</i> ; as, ardere, ardo,	arfi,	arfo,	
3. In <i>gere</i> ; as, piangere, piango,	pianfi,	pianto.	
4. In <i>gliere</i> ; as, Cogliere, Colgo, and	coglio, colfi,	colto.	
5. In <i>here</i> ; as, trahere, or trarre, trao,	traffi,	tratto.	
6. In <i>lere</i> ; as, fvellere, fvello	fvelfi,	fvolto.	
7. In <i>mere</i> ; as, imprimere, imprimo, impressi,	impresso.		
8. In <i>nere</i> ; as, ponere, pongo, posi,	posto.		
9. In <i>ndere</i> ; as, prendere, prendo, presi,	preso.		
10. In <i>pere</i> ; as, rompere, rompo, ruppi,	rotto.		
11. In <i>rere</i> ; as, correre, corro, corfi,	corso.		
12. In <i>tere</i> ; as, mettere, metto, misi,	messo.		
13. In <i>vere</i> ; as, scrivere, scrivo, scriffi,	scritto.		

Change all these Terminations in *fi*, you will find the Preter definite of all these Verbs; ex. to find the Definite Tense of *vincere*, *torcere*; *ardere*, *prendere*, *piangere*, *rispondere*, change the Terminations *cere*, *dere*, *gere*, *ndere*, in *fi*, you will find *vinfi*, *torfi*, *arfi*, *presi*, *pianfi*, *risposi*.

But to remove all Difficulties about the Termination of the Definite Tense, you must observe, that some Verbs double the *ff* in the Definite; some not; these following are of the first Sort, and all the others are of the second.

m 4

Inf.

<i>Inf.</i>	<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Def.</i>	<i>Part.</i>
<i>Addurre</i> , to alledge,	adduco,	addussi,	addotto.
<i>Affiggere</i> , to affix,	affiggo,	affissi,	affisso.
<i>Ascrivere</i> , to ascribe,	ascrivo,	ascrissi,	ascritto.
<i>Attrahere</i> , to attract,	attraho,	attrassi,	attratto.
<i>Commovere</i> , to move,	commovo,	commossi,	commosso.
<i>Condurre</i> , to conduct,	conduco,	condussi,	condotto.
<i>Costruere</i> , to build,	costruo,	costrussi,	costrutto.
<i>Contrahere</i> , to contract,	contraho,	contrassi,	contratto.
<i>Correggere</i> , to correct,	correggo,	corressi,	corretto.
<i>Cuocere</i> , to bake,	cuoco,	coffi,	cotto.
<i>Direggere</i> , to direct,	direggo,	direffi,	diretto.
<i>Distrarre</i> , to take off,	distrao,	distrassi,	distratto.
<i>Distruiggere</i> , to destroy,	distruggo,	distrussi,	distrutto.
<i>Eleggere</i> , to chuse,	eleggo,	eleffi,	eletto.
<i>Erigere</i> , to erect,	erigo,	eressi,	eretto.
<i>Esprimere</i> , to express,	esprimo,	espressi,	espresso.
<i>Figgere</i> , to thrust in,	figgo,	fissi,	fitto.
<i>Introdurre</i> , to introduce,	introduco,	introdussi,	introdotta.
<i>Imprimere</i> , to print,	imprimo,	impressi,	impresso.
<i>Indurre</i> , to induce,	induco,	indussi,	indotto.
<i>Leggere</i> , to read,	leggo,	lessi,	letto.
<i>Muovere</i> , to move,	movo,	mossi,	mosso.
<i>Negligere</i> , to neglect,	negligo,	neglessi,	negletto.
<i>Opprimere</i> , to oppress,	opprimo,	oppressi,	oppresso.
<i>Percuotere</i> , to strike,	percuoto,	percolsi,	percolto.
<i>Produrre</i> , to produce,	produco,	produssi,	prodotto.
<i>Promovere</i> , to promote,	promovo,	promossi,	promosso.
<i>Proteggere</i> , to protect,	protego,	proteffi,	protetto.
<i>Reggere</i> , to govern,	reggo,	ressi,	retto.
<i>Ridurre</i> , to reduce,	riduco,	ridussi,	ridotto.
<i>Riflettere</i> , to reflect,	rifletto,	riflessi,	riflesso.
<i>Rilucere</i> , to shine,	riluco,	rilussi.	
<i>Rimovere</i> , to remove,	rimovo,	rimossi,	rimosso.

Rif-

<i>Riscuotere</i> , to redeem,	riscuoto,	riscossi,	riscosso.
<i>Scrivere</i> , to write,	scrivo,	scrissi,	scritto.
<i>Scuotere</i> , to shake,	scuoto,	scoffi,	scoffo.
<i>Sedurre</i> , to seduce,	seduco,	sedussi,	sedotto.
<i>Sopprimere</i> , to suppress,	sopprimo,	soppresi,	soppresso.
<i>Struggere</i> , to destroy,	struggo,	strussi,	strutto.
<i>Succedere</i> , to succeed,	succedo,	succeffi,	succeffo.
<i>Tradurre</i> , to translate,	traduco,	tradussi,	tradotto.
<i>Trafiggere</i> , to transfix,	trafiggo,	traffissi,	traffitto.
<i>Trarre</i> , to draw,	trao, <i>or</i> traggo,	traffi,	tratto.
<i>Vivere</i> , to live,	vivo,	vissi,	vissuto.

To conjugate these Verbs with Facility, you must remember what I said in the Beginning of the irregular Verbs in *ere*, where I noted, that the Definite Tense has three Persons regular; and three irregular.

The three Persons regular, are the second Singular, the first and second Plural; and the three Irregular, are the first and third Singular, and third Plural. And though this Rule be general and easy, yet Beginners sometimes mistake one Person for another; but the true Way not to be deceived is, to remember, that the second Person of the Definite Tense of all the Verbs both regular and irregular, is formed of the Infinitive, changing *re*, in *sti*; as, *vincere*, *vincesti*, *ardere*, *ardesti*, *piangere*, *piangesti*; except only *essere*, that makes *festi*.

The first Person plural is also formed of the Infinitive, changing *re*, in *mmo*; as, *amare*, *amammo*, *credere*, *credemmo*, *leggere*, *leggemmo*, &c.

The

The second Person plural is formed of the second Singular, changing the *i* into *e*; as, *amasti*, *amaste*, *credesti*, *credeste*, *leggesti*, *leggeste*.

The first Person singular of the Irregular Verbs is always terminated in *i*; as, *lessi*, *vinfi*, *pianfi*; changing the *i* into *e*, you will make the third Person singular, *lesse*, *vinse*, *pianse*; and adding *ro* to this last, makes the third Plural, *lessero*, *vinsero*, *piansero*.

#### EXAMPLE.

*Lessi*, *presi*, *lesse*, *prese*, *lessero*, *presero*.  
*Scrissi*, *vinfi*, *scrisse*, *vinse*, *scrissero*, *vinsero*.

Remember to read these Observations, they are very useful in conjugating the Irregular Verbs.

*Note*, That the Verbs ending in *ggere*, *bere*, and *vere*, double the *s* in the Definite; and some in the Participle, double the *s*, and some double the *t*; as, *trabere*, *trassi*, *tratto*; *scrivere*, *scrissi*, *scritto*; *muovere*, *mossi*, *mosso*; *leggere*, *lessi*, *letto*.

These Rules would be sufficient to learn to conjugate the Irregular Verbs in *ere*; however, I thought fit, for greater Facility, to explain the different Terminations more at large, by conjugating a Verb of each.

*Of the Verbs in cere.*

*Cuocere*, to bake.

*Indicative Present.*

*S. Io cuoco*, I bake. *Tu cuoci*, thou bakest.

*Egli cuoce*, he baketh,

*P. Noi*

**P.** *Noi cuociamo*, we bake. *Voi cuocete*, ye bake.  
*Eglino cuocono*, they bake.

**Imperfect.** *Io cuocervo*, I baked, &c.

*Definite.*

**S.** *Io cossi*, I baked.

*Tu cuocesti*, thou bakedst.

*Egli cosse*, he

**P.** *Noi cuocemmo*, we

*Voi cuoceste*, ye

*Eglino cosseno*, they

} baked.

**Future.** *Io cuocerò*, &c. I shall bake, &c.

*Imperative.*

**S.** *Cuoci*, bake thou. *Cuoca*, let him bake.

**P.** *Cuociamo*, let us bake. *Cuocete*, bake ye,

*Cuocano*, let them bake.

*Conjunctive Present.*

**Conjunctive Present.** *Che io cuoca*, that I bake, &c.

**First Imperfect.** *Io cuocerei*, &c. I should bake, &c.

**Second Imperfect.** *Io cuocessi*, &c. I baked, &c.

**Infinitive.** *Cuocere*, to bake.

**Participle.** *Cotto*, baked.

**Gerund.** *Cuocendo*, baking.

Conjugate in the same manner,

*Conducere*, } to lead, *conduco*, *condussi*, *condotto*,  
or *Condurre* }

Ri-

*Rilucere*, to shine, *riluco rilussi*, without Participle.

*Torcere*, to twist, *torco, torfi, torto*.

*Vincere*, to win, *vinco, vinsi, vinto*.

### Of the Verbs in *dere*.

The Verbs in *dere*, in the Definite make *fi*, or *ssi*, and in the Participle *so*, or *to*.

*Ardere*, to burn; *ardo, arsi, arso*.

*Chiudere*, to shut; *chiudo, chiusi, chiuso*.

*Chiedere*, to ask; *chiedo, chiesi, chiesto*.

*Perdere*, to lose; *perdo, persi or perdei, perso, or perduto*.

*Ridere*, to laugh; *rido, risi, riso*.

*Rodere*, to gnaw; *rodo, rosi, roso*.

*Succedere*, to succeed; *succedo, successi, successo*.

*Concedere*, to grant; *concedo, concessi, concesso*.

### Of the Verbs in *gere*.

The Verbs in *gere*, in the Perfect make *fi*, and in the Participle *to*.

*Cingere*, to gird; *cingo, cinsi, cinto*.

*Estinguere*, to extinguish; *estinguo, estinsi, estinto*.

*Spingere*, to thrust; *spingo, spinfi, spinto*.

*Ungere*, to anoint; *ungo, unfi, unto*.

*Porgere*, to reach; *porgo, porfi, porto*.

But the Verbs in *argere*, and *ergere*, in the Participle, make *so*.

*Spar-*

*Spargere*, to spread; *spargo*, *sparsi*, *sparsi*.  
*Immergere*, to plunge; *immergo*, *immersi*, *immerso*.  
*Sommergere*, to drown; *sommergo*, *sommerfi*, *sommerfo*.

Except *Ergere*, to erect; *Ergo*, *erxi*, *erto*.

*Note*, That the Verbs that have a Vowel before *gere*, ought to be spelled with two *gg*, and double the *s* in the Definite.

*Friggere*, to fry; *friggo*, *frissi*, *fritto*.

*Leggere*, to read; *leggo*, *lessi*, *letto*.

*Of the Verbs in gliere.*

*Note*, That the Verbs in *gliere*, besides the Irregularity of the Definite, and Participle, make also a Contraction in the Infinitive Mood, the Future, and the first Imperfect; as, *cogliere*, or *corre*, to gather; Future, *corrò*; Imp. *correi*, in the Definite they make *si*, and in the Participle *to*.

*Cogliere*, or } to gather; *colgo* and *coglio*, *colsi*,  
*Corre*, } *colto*.

*Sciogliere*, or } to lose; *sciolgo* and *scioglio*, *sciolsi*,  
*Sciorre* } *sciolto*.

*Togliere*, or } to take; *tolgo* and *toglio*, *tolsi*, *tolto*.  
*Torre* }

*Scegliere*, to chuse, makes no Contraction in the Infinitive Mood, but is irregular, like the rest. I shall conjugate *Cogliere*, that it may serve for an Example for all the others, that have the same Termination.

*Indi-*

*Indicative Present.*

- S. *Io colgo*, or *coglio*, I gather.  
*Tu cogli*, thou gatherest.  
*Egli coglie*, he gathereth,  
P. *Noi cogliamo*, we  
*Voi cogliete*, ye  
*Eglino colgono*, or *cogliono*, they } gather.

Imperfect. *Io coglievo*, &c. I gathered, &c.

*Definite.*

- S. *Io colsi*, I gathered.  
*Tu cogliesti*, thou gatheredst  
*Egli colse*, he  
P. *Noi cogliemmo*, we  
*Voi coglieste*, ye  
*Eglino colsero*, they } gathered.

*Future.*

- S. *Io corrd*, I shall gather.  
*Tu corrai*, thou shalt  
*Egli corrà*, he  
P. *Noi corremo*, we  
*Voi'correte*, ye  
*Eglino corranno*, they } shall gather.

*Imperat.*

- S. *Cogli*, gather thou.  
*Colga*, or *coglia*, let him gather.  
P. *Cogliamo*, let us gather.  
*Cogliete*, gather ye.  
*Colgano*, or *cogliano*, let them gather.

Con-

*Conjunct.*

S. *Io colga*, or *coglia*, I gather.

*Tu colga*, thou gatherest.

*Egli colga*, he gathereth.

P. *Noi cogliamo*, we

*Voi cogliate*, ye

*Eglino colgano*, or *cogliano*, they } gather.

*First Imperfect.*

S. *Io correi*, I should gather.

*Tu corresti*, thou shouldst gather.

*Egli correbbe*, he

P. *Noi corremmo*, we

*Voi correste*, ye

*Eglino correbbero*, they } should gather.

Second Imperfect. *Io coglieffi*, &c. I gathered, &c.

Infinitive. *Cogliere*, or *corre*, to gather.

Participle. *Colto*, gathered.

Gerund. *Cogliendo*, gathering.

*Of the Verbs in here.*

*Trahere*, and by Contraction *Trarre*, with its Compounds, being the only Verbs that have their Termination in *here*, in the Definite make *ffi*, and in the Participle *ito*: But you must take notice, that modern Authors write *trarre*, or *traere* without *h*.

Indicative Present. *Trao* or *traggo*, *trai*, *trac*,

*traiamo*, *traste*, *traono*, or *traggono*, I draw, &c,

Im-

Imperfect. *Traevo, traevi, &c.* I did draw, &c.

Definite. *Trassi, traesti, trasse, traemmo, traste, trassero*, I drew, &c.

Future. *Trarrò, trarrai, &c.* I shall draw, &c.

Imperative. *Trai, tragga, traiamo, traete, traggano*, draw thou, &c.

Conjunctive Present. *Che tragga, tragga, tragga, traiamo, traiate, traggano*, that I draw, &c.

First Imperfect. *Trarrei, trarresti, trarrebbe, trarremmo, trarreste, trarrebbero*, I should draw.

Second Imperfect. *Traessi, traessi, traesse, &c.* that I did draw.

Participle. *Tratto*, drawn.

#### *Of the Verbs in lere.*

*Svellere*, to pluck, with its Compounds, are the only Verbs in *lere*, that make *si*, in the Definite, and *to* in the Participle.

Present. *Svello*; Definite. *Svelsi*; Particip. *Suelto*.

#### *Of the Verbs in mere.*

*Premere*, to press; and *Sumere*, to take, and their Compounds, are the only irregular Verbs of this Termination.

*Premo, pressi, or premei, premuto.*

Its Compounds in *imere*, make in the Definite *ssi*, and in the Participle *sso*; as,

*Opprimere*, to oppress; *opprimo, oppressi, oppresso.*

*Imprimere*, to print; *imprimo, impressi, impresso.*

*Su-*

*Sumere* is not in use; its Compounds make *sunsi, sunto*.

*Assumere*, to assume; *assumo, assunsi, assunto*,  
*Consumere*, to waste; *consumo, consunsi, consumo*.

*Of the Verbs in nere.*

*Ponere*, to lay, is the only Verb that changes the *nere* into *si*, for the Definite, and in *sto*, for the Participle, and makes a Contraction in the Infinitive Mood.

*Note*, That the Verbs whose Termination is in *nere*, take a *g*, where the Letters *o* or *a* would follow the *n*; that is to say, in all the Present Tenses; and change the *ne* into *r* in the Future, and First Imperfect.

Present. *Pongo, poni, pone, poniamo, ponete, pongono*, I lay, &c.

Imperfect. *Ponevo, &c.* I did lay, &c.

Definite. *Posi, ponesti, pose, ponemmo, poneste, posero*, I laid, &c.

Future. *Porro, porrai, porrà, &c.* I shall lay, &c.

Imperat. *Poni, ponga, poniamo, ponete, pongano*, lay thou, &c.

Conjunctive Present. *Che ponga, a, a, poniamo, poniate, pongano*, that I lay, &c.

First Imperfect. *Porrei, porresti, porrebbe, &c.* I should lay.

Second Imperfect. *Poneffi, poneffi, poneffe, &c.* I laid.

n

In-

Infinitive. *Ponere*, or *porre*, to lay.

Participle. *Posso*, laid.

Gerund. *Ponendo*, laying.

*Of the Verbs in ndere.*

Change *ndere* into *si*, you'll form the Definite Tense, and into *sto*, *uso*, and *oso*, you'll form the Participle.

*Rispondere*, to answer; *rispondo*, *risposi*, *risposto*.

*Nascondere*, to hide; *nascondo*, *nascosi*, *nascosto*.

*Confondere*, to confound; *confondo*, *confusi*, *confuso*.

*Fondere*, to melt; *fondo*, *fusi*, *fuso*.

*Tondere*, to shear; *tondo*, *tosì*, *tofo*.

The Verbs in *ndere*, make the Participle in *eso*.

*Attendere*, to attend; *attendo*, *attesi*, *atteso*.

*Prendere*, to take; *prendo*, *presi*, *preso*.

*Rendere*, to render; *rendo*, *resi*, *reso*.

*Fendere*, to cleave, and *Pendere*, to hang, are regular in the Definite; *fendei* and *fendetti*, *pendei* and *pendetti*, in the Participle *fenduto* and *fesso*, *penduto*.

The Compounds of these two Verbs are irregular, and make *esi* in the Definite, and *eso* in the Participle; as,

*Difendere*, to defend; *difendo*, *difesi*, *difeso*.

*Appendere*, to hang up, or on; *appendo*, *appesi*, *appeso*.

*Of*

*Of the Verbs in pere.*

*Rompere*, to break, with its Compounds, are the only Verbs of this Termination; and make in the Present. *Rompo*, *rompi*, *rompe*, *rompiamo*, *rompete*, *rompono*, I break, &c.

Imperfect. *Rompevo*, *rompevi*, &c. I did break, &c.

Definite. *Ruppi*, *rompesti*, *ruppe*, *rompemmo*, *rompeste*, *ruppero*, I broke, &c.

Future. *Romperò*, *rompetai*, &c. I shall break, &c.

Imperative. *Rompi*, *rompa*, *rompiamo*, *rompete*, *rompano*, break thou, &c.

Conjunctive Present. *Rompa*, *a*, *a*, *rompiamo*, *rompiate*, *rompano*, that I break, &c.

First Imperfect. *Romperei*, *romperesti*, &c. I should break, &c.

Second Imperfect. *Rompeffi*, *rompeffi*, *rompeffe*, &c. I broke. &c.

Infinitive. *Rompere*, to break.

Participle. *Rotto*, broken.

Gerund. *Rompendo*, breaking.

*Of the Verbs in Rere.*

Only *correre*, and its Compounds, are terminated in *rere*, and make *si* in the Definite, and *so* in the Participle.

*Correre*, to run; *corro*, *corsi*, *corso*.

*Accorrere*, to run to; *accorro*, *accorsi*, *accorso*.

*Concorrere*, to concur; *concorro*, *concorsi*, *concorso*.

n 2

Of

*Of the Verbs in tere.*

The Verbs in *tere*, make *ssi* in the Definite, and *ssò* in the Participle.

*Riflettere*, to reflect; *rifletto*, *riflessi*, *riflesso*.  
*Riscuotere*, to receive; *riscuoto*, *riscossi*, *riscosso*.  
*Scuotere*, to shake; *scuoto*, *scoffi*, *scoffo*.  
*Percuotere*, to strike; *percuoto*, *percoffi*, *percosso*.

*Mettere*, to put, makes in the Definite, *misi*, *mettesti*, *mettemmo*, *metteste*, *misero*; Participle, *messo*. *Promettere*, to promise, *prometto*, *promissi*, *promesso*; we find sometimes *messero*, *promessero*; but oftener in Verse than in Prose.

*Of the Verbs in vere.*

The Definite Tense of the Verbs in *vere*, is formed by changing *vere* into *ssi* or *si*: The Participles have different Terminations.

*Affolvere*, to absolve; *assolvo*, *assolssi* or *assolvei*, *assoluto*.

*Risolvere*, to resolve; *risolvo*, *risolssi* or *risolvei*, *risoluto*.

*Muovere*, to move; *muovo*, *moffi*, *mosso*.

*Rimovere*, to remove; *rimovo*, *rimossi*, *rimosso*.

*Scrivere*, to write; *scrivo*, *scrissi*, *scritto*.

*Vivere*, to live; *vivo*, *vissi*, *vissuto*.

*Note*, That the Conjunctive Present of all the Verbs in *ere* and *ire* is formed of the first Person

Person of the Indicative, changing the *o* into *a*; as *vedere*, *vedo*, *veda*; *scrivere*, *scrivo*, *scriva*; *rendere*, *rendo*, *renda*; *dormire*, *dormo*, *dorma*; *sentire*, *sento*, *senta*; *finire*, *finisco*, *finisca*; except the Verbs, *essere*, *sono*, *sia*; *sapere*, *so*, *sappia*; *avere*, *ho*, *abbia*; *dovere*, *devo*, *debba*.

*Of the irregular Verbs of the Third Conjugation.*

There are eight Verbs of the Third Conjugation more irregular than the others, viz.

<i>Aprire</i> , to open.	}	<i>Salire</i> , to go up.
<i>Coprire</i> , to cover.		<i>Udire</i> , to hear.
<i>Dire</i> , to say.		<i>Venire</i> , to come.
<i>Morire</i> , to die.		<i>Uscire</i> , to go out.

*Aprire* is irregular in the Definite, where, besides *aprii*, it makes also *apersi*; and in the Participle.

Indicative Present. *Apro*, *apri*, *apre*, *apriamo*, *aprite*, *aprono*, I open, &c.

Imperfect. *Aprivo*, *apriivi*, &c. I did open, &c.

Definite. *Aprii* and *apersi*, *apristi*, *apri* and *aperse*, *aprimmo*, *apriste*, *aprirono*, and *apersero*. I opened, &c.

Future. *Aprirò*, *aprirai*, &c. I shall open, &c.

Imperative. *Apri*, *apra*, *apriamo*, *aprite*, *apranò*, open thou, &c.

Conjunctive Present. *Apra*, *a*, *a*, *apriamo*, *apriate*, *aprano*, that I open, &c.

a 3

First

First Imperfect. *Aprirei, apriresti, &c.* I should open, &c.

Second Imperfect. *Aprissi, aprissi, aprisse, &c.* I opened, &c.

Infinitive. *Aprire*, to open.

Participle. *Aperto*, opened.

Gerund. *Aprendo*, opening.

*Coprire*, to cover, is irregular as *aprire*, and makes *coprii* and *copersi*, and in the Participle *coperto*.

Indicative Present. *Copro, copri, copre, copriamo, coprite, coprono*, I cover, &c.

Imperfect. *Coprivo, coprivi, &c.* I did cover, &c.

Definite. *Coprii* and *copersi, copristi, copri and coperse, coprimmo, copriste, coprirono and copersero*, I opened, &c.

Future. *Coprirò, coprirai, &c.* I shall open, &c.

Imperative. *Copri, copra, copriamo, coprite, coprano*, cover thou, &c.

Conjunctive Present. *Che copra, a, a, copriamo, copriate, coprano*, that I cover, &c.

First Imperfect. *Coprirei, copriresti, &c.* I should cover, &c.

Second Imperfect. *Coprissi, coprissi, coprissi, &c.* I covered, &c.

Infinitive. *Coprire*, to cover,

Participle. *Coperto*, covered.

Gerund. *Coprendo*, covering.

*Dire,*

*Dire*, to say,

Is irregular in the Present, the Definite, and in the Participle.

Indicative Present. *Dico, dici, dice, diciamo, dite, dicono*, I say, &c.

Imperfect. *Diceva, dicevi*, &c. I did say, &c.

Definite. *Dissi, dicesti, disse, dicemmo, diceste, dissero*, I said, &c.

Future. *Dirò, dirai*, &c. I shall say, &c.

Imperative. *Dici, dica, diciamo, dite, dicano*, say thou, &c.

Conjunctive Present. *Dica, a, a, diciamo, diciate, dicano*, that I say, &c.

First Imperfect. *Direi, diresti*, &c. I should say.

Second Imperfect. *Dicessi, dicessi, dicessi*, &c. I said, &c.

Infinitive. *Dire*, to say.

Participle. *Detto*, said.

Gerund. *Dicendo*, saying.

*Morire*, to die.

*Morire* is no otherwise irregular in the Present, than as it has two Terminations.

Indicative Present. *Moro* or *muojo*, *mori, more, moriamo* or *mojamo*, *morite, morono* or *muojono*, &c. I die, &c.

Imperfect. *Morivo, morivi*, &c. I did die, &c.

**Definite.** *Morii, moristi, morì, morimmo, moriste, morirono.* I died, &c. *Sono morto,* I am dead.

*Ero* } *Morto,* I was dead.  
*Fui* }

**Future.** *Morirò, or morrò, morirai or morrai, &c.*  
 I shall die, &c.

**Imperative.** *Mori, mora or moja, moriamo or muojamo, morite, morano, or muojano,* die thou, &c.

**Conjunctive Present.** *Io mora or moja, a, a, meriamo or muojamo, moriate, morano or muojano,* that I die, &c.

**First Imperfect.** *Morirei or morrei, moriresti or morresti, &c.* I should die, &c.

**Second Imperfect.** *Morissi, morissi, morisse, &c.*  
 I did die, &c.

**Infinitive.** *Morire,* to die.

**Participle.** *Morto,* dead.

**Gerund.** *Morendo,* dying.

*Salire,* to go up.

*Salire* is irregular as *morire*, that is to say, it has two Terminations in the Present.

**Indicative Present.** *Salgo and saglio, sali, sale, salgiamo, salite, salgono and sagliono,* I go up, &c.

**Imperfect.** *Salivo, salivi, &c.* I did go up, &c.

**Definite.** *Salii, salisti, salì, salimmo, saliste salirono,* I went up, &c.

**Future.** *Salirò, salirai, &c.* I shall go up, &c.  
 Impe-

Imperative. *Sali*, *salga* or *saglia*, *sagliano*, *salite*, *salgano* or *sagliano*, go up, &c.

Conjunctive. *Salga*, or *Saglia*, *a*, *a*, *sagliamo*, *sagliate*, *salgano* or *sagliano*, that I go up, &c.

First Imperfect. *Salirei*, *saliresti*, I should go up.

Second Imperfect. *Salissi*, *salissi*, *salisse*, &c. I went up, &c.

Infinitive. *Salire*, to go up.

Participle. *Salito*, gone up.

Gerund. *Salendo*, going up.

*Udire*, to hear.

*Udire*, is irregular only in the Present, changing the *u* into *o*, in the first, second, and third Persons singular, and third plural.

Indicative Present. *odo*, *odi*, *ode*, *udiamo*, *udite*, *odono*, I hear, &c.

Imperfect. *Udivo*, *udivi*, &c. I did hear, &c.

Definite. *Udii*, *udisti*, *udi*, *udimmo*, *udiste*, *udirono*, I heard, &c.

Future. *Udirò*, *udirai*, &c. I shall hear, &c.

Imperative. *Odi*, *oda*, *udiamo*, *udite*, *odano*, hear thou, &c.

Conjunctive Present. *Oda*, *a*, *a*, *udiamo*, *udiate*, *odano*, that I hear, &c.

First Imperfect. *Udirei*, *udiresti*, &c. I should hear, &c.

Second Imperfect. *Udissi*, *udissi*, *udisse*, &c. I heard, &c.

Infi-

Infinitive. *Udire*, to hear.

Participle. *Udito*, heard.

Gerund. *Udendo*, hearing.

*Venire*, to come.

Indicative Present. *Vengo, vieni, viene, veniamo, venite, vengono*, I come, &c.

Imperfect. *Venivo, venivi, &c.* I did come.

Definite. *Venni, venisti, venne, venimmo, veniste, vennero*, I came, &c.

*Sono venuto*, I am come.

*Ero* } *Venuto*, I was come.  
*Fui* }

Future. *Verrò, verrai, verrà, verremo, verrete, verranno*, I shall come, &c.

Imperative. *Vieni, venga, veniamo, venite, vengano*, come thou, &c.

Conjunctive Present, *Venga, a, a, veniamo, veniate, vengano*, that I come, &c.

First Imperfect. *Io verrei, tu verresti*, I should come, &c.

Second Imperfect. *Io venissi, venissi, venisse, &c.* I came, &c.

Infinitive. *Venire*, to come.

Participle. *Venuto*, come.

Gerund. *Venendo*, coming.

*Uscire*, to go out.

*Uscire* is only irregular in the Present, changing the

the *u* into *e*, in the first, second and third Persons Singular, and third Plural.

Indicative Present. *Esko*, *esci*, *esca*, *usciamo*, *uscite*, *escono*, I go out, &c.

Imperfect. *Usciuo*, *uscivi*, &c. I did go out, &c.

Definite. *Uscii*, *uscisti*, *uscì*, *uscimmo*, *usciste*, *uscirono*, I went out, &c.

*Sono uscito*, &c. I am gone out, &c.

*Ero* } *uscito*, I was gone out.  
*Fui* }

Future. *Uscirò*, *uscirai*, &c. I shall go out, &c.

Imperative. *Esci*, *esca*, *usciamo*, *uscite*, *escano*, go out, &c.

Conjunctive. *Esca*, *a*, *a*, *usciamo*, *uscite*, *escano*, I go out, &c.

First Imperfect. *Uscirei*, *usciresti*, &c. I should go out, &c.

Second Imperfect. *Uscissi*, *uscissi*, *uscisse*, &c. I did go out, &c.

Infinitive. *Uscire*, to go out.

Participle. *Uscito*, gone out.

Gerund. *Uscendo*, going out.

The third Conjugation of the Verbs in *ire*, has another Kind of Verbs irregular, only in the Present, which are formed from the Infinitive, changing *ire* in *isco*; as, *ardire*, *ardisco*. I shall conjugate this Verb, that it may serve for a Rule to all the rest.

But

But in order to give a general Rule about the irregular Verbs in *isco*, note that the following Verbs are the only ones that do not end in *isco*, but are conjugated like the regular Verb *dormire*. All the other Verbs in *ire*, that are not in this Collection, have their Termination in *isco*.

<i>Aprire</i> , to open;	<i>apro</i> ,	<i>aprii</i> ,	<i>aperto</i> .
<i>Bollire</i> , to boil;	<i>bollo</i> ,	<i>bollii</i> ,	<i>bollito</i> .
<i>Consentire</i> , to consent;	<i>consento</i> ,	<i>consentii</i> ,	<i>consentito</i> .
<i>Coprire</i> , to cover;	<i>copro</i> ,	<i>coprii</i> ,	<i>coperto</i> .
<i>Convertire</i> , to convert;	<i>converto</i> ,	<i>convertii</i> ,	<i>convertito</i> .
<i>Cucire</i> , to sew;	<i>cucio</i> ,	<i>cucii</i> ,	<i>cucito</i> .
<i>Dormire</i> , to sleep;	<i>dormo</i> ,	<i>dormii</i> ,	<i>dormito</i> ,
<i>Fuggire</i> , to run away;	<i>fuggo</i> ,	<i>fuggii</i> ,	<i>fuggito</i> .
<i>Mentire</i> , to lye;	<i>mento</i> ,	<i>mentii</i> ,	<i>mentito</i> .
<i>Morire</i> , to die;	<i>moro</i> ,	<i>morii</i> ,	<i>morto</i> .
<i>Partire</i> , to depart;	<i>parto</i> ,	<i>partii</i> ,	<i>partito</i> .
<i>Pentirsi</i> , to repent;	<i>mi pento</i> ,	<i>mi pentii</i> ,	<i>pentito</i> .
<i>Salire</i> , to go up;	<i>salgo</i> ,	<i>salii</i> ,	<i>salito</i> .
<i>Seguire</i> , to follow;	<i>seguo</i> ,	<i>seguii</i> ,	<i>seguito</i> .
<i>Servire</i> , to serve;	<i>servo</i> ,	<i>servii</i> ,	<i>servito</i> .
<i>Soffrire</i> , to suffer;	<i>soffro</i> ,	<i>soffrii</i> ,	<i>sofferto</i> .
<i>Sortire</i> , to go out;	<i>sorto</i> ,	<i>sortii</i> ,	<i>sortito</i> .
<i>Vestire</i> , to dress;	<i>vesto</i> ,	<i>vestii</i> ,	<i>vestito</i> .

*Note*, That Some of the Verbs in *isco*, are irregular not only in the Present, but also in the Definite Tense, and in the Participle, viz. these following.

*Ap-*

*Apparire*, to appear; *apparisco*, *apparfi*, *apparso*.

*Comparire*, to appear before; *Comparisco*, *comparfi*, *comparso*.

*Offerire*, to offer; *offerisco*, *offerii* and *offerfi*, *offerto*.

*Istruire*, to instruct; *instruisco*, *instrussi*, *istrutto*.

*Proferire*, to proffer; *proferisco*, *proferii*, *proferito*.

*Soffrire*, to suffer; *soffro* or *soffrisco*, *soffrii*, *sofferto*.

*Sepellire*, to bury; *sepellisco*, *sepellii*, *sepellito* or *sepolto*.

Some are irregular in the Definite Tense, and in the Participle, and have not the Termination in *isco*; as,

*Aprire*, to open; *apro*, *aprii* or *aperfi*, *aperto*.

*Coprire*, to cover; *copro*, *coprii* or *coperfi*, *coperto*.

### Conjugation of the Verbs in *isco*.

*Favorire*, to favour.

#### Indicative Present.

S. *Favorisco*, I favour.

*Favorisci*, thou favourest.

*Favorisce*, he favoureth.

P. *Favoriamo*, we

*Favorite*, ye } favour.

*Favoriscono*, they

Imperfect. *Favorivo*, *favorivi*, &c. I did favour, &c.

Definite. *Favorii*, *favoristi*, *favori*, &c. I have favoured, &c.

Future. *Favorirò*, *favorirai*, &c. I shall favour, &c.  
Im-

*Imperative.*

S. *Favorisci*, favour thou.

*Favorisca*, let him favour.

P. *Favoriamo*, let us favour.

*Favorite*, favour ye.

*Favoriscano*, let them favour.

*Conjunctive Present.*

S. *Che favorisca*, tha-I favour.

*Che favorisca*, that thou favourest.

*Che favorisca*, that he favoureth.

P. *Che favoriamo*, that we

*Che favoriate*, that ye

*Che favoriscano*, that they

} favour.

First Imperfect. *Favorirei*, *favoriresti*, &c. that I did favour, &c.

Second Imperfect. *Favorissi*, *favorissi*, *favorisse*, that I did favour, &c.

Infinitive. *Favorire*, to favour.

Participle. *Favorito*, favoured.

Gerund. *Favorendo*, favouring.

*Note*, That several of the Verbs in *isco*, have two Terminations in the Present of the Indicative, both in Verse and Prose; as, *soffro* and *soffrisco*; *offro* and *offrisco*.

Others have two Terminations only in the third Person singular of the same Tense; as, *languire* makes *languet* and *languisce*; *muggire*, *mugge* and *muggisce*.

There

There are also some Verbs that be of two Conjugations, and have by Consequence a double Termination; such as,

*Colorare* and *Colorire*, to colour.

*Impazzare* and *impazzire*, to grow mad.

*Inacerbare* and *inacerbire*, to grow fowr.

*Indurare* and *indurire*, to harden.

*Innammare* and *innanimire*, to encourage.

Poets use very often the Verbs *Ire* and *Gire*, instead of the Verb *Andare*, to go, which are both Defectives: they are conjugated thus.

*Ire*, to go.

Imperfect. *Iva*, he went; *Ivano*, they went.

Imperative. *Ite*, go ye.

Participle. *Ito*, gone.

*Gire*, to go.

Present. *Gite*, ye go.

Imperfect. *Givo*, *givi*, *giva*, or *gia*, *givano*, I did go, &c.

Definite. *Gii*, *gisti*, *gè* or *gio*, *gimmo*, *giste*, *girono*, I went, &c.

Imperative. *Gite*, go ye.

*Conjunctive.*

Second Imperfect. *Gissi*, *gissi*, *gisse*, *gissimo*, *giste*, *gissero*, I did no, &c.

Infinitive. *Gire*, to go.

Participle. *Gito*, gone.

Ob-

*Observations upon the Verb Venire.*

The Verb *Venire* may be joined with the Participles passive, to signify a Thing, that could be expressed without this Verb; ex. *gli venne veduta una donna assai bella*, he saw a very handsome Woman; where *venne veduta* is instead of *vide*, he saw. The same Verb *Venire*, joined with some Participles, takes the place of the Verb *Essere*; ex. *mi vien detto*, I am told; *verrà lodato*, he will be praised.

*Of Verbs Neuter.*

There are two Sorts of Verbs neuter, the one is active both in Voice and Signification; as, *io dormo*, I sleep; *tu sedì*, thou sittest; *egli parte*, he goes; *noi andiamo*, we go. The other passive in Signification, and is always accompanied by the Particles *mi*, *ti*, *si*, *ci*, *vi*; as, *mi rallegro*, I am glad; *mi ricordo*, I remember; *egli si pente*, he is sorry.

The first is called active, because comprehending in it self the Action, and the Impression it produces, it governs no Noun in the Accusative; such as *andare*, *dormire*.

From this Verb one cannot form a passive Verb, as they do of an active Verb; and if sometimes we join the Verb *essere*, to be, to the Participle of the neuter Verb, it takes then the Signification of the *Perfect Tense*; ex. *Io sono amato*, I am loved, is  
in

in the Present of the Indicative; and *io sono andato*, I am gone, is in the Perfect.

For the same Reason the Verb Neuter never admits the Definite, or Pluperfect Tense of the Verb *essere*, which is *fui*, or *sono stato*; but we say *io sono andato*, and not *Io fui andato*, or *io sono stato andato*.

The second is called passive, because the Action returns upon the Agent that produces it; as, *io mi levo*, I rise; *io mi rallegro*, I rejoice; *io mi ricordo*, I remember.

It is called also a reciprocal Verb, for the mutual Relation there is between the Nominative of the Verb, and the Case governed by it; as, *Io mi rallegro*, I rejoice, it is I that rejoice, and am rejoiced; *Io mi contristo*, I am troubled; it is I that trouble, and am troubled.

All Verbs may be changed into Neuter Passive, by the help of the conjunctive Pronouns *mi*, *ti*, *si*, *ci*, *vi*; *io mi amo*, I love my self; *tu ti consoli*, thou comfortest thy self, &c.

Neuters active are conjugated with the Verb *Avere*; as,

*Ho camminato*, I have walked.

*Ho dovuto*, I have owed.

*Ho dormito*, I have slept.

*Ho seduto*, I have sat.

Neuters Passive are conjugated with the Verb *essere*, to be; as,

o

So-

*Sono andato*, I went.  
*Sono arrivato*, I arrived.  
*Sono accorso*, I ran unto.  
*Sono entrato*, I entered.  
*Sono morto*, I died.  
*Sono nato*, I was born.  
*Sono partito*, I went away.  
*Sono passato*, I passed.  
*Sono restato*, I stayed.  
*Sono rimasto*, I remained.  
*Sono ritornato*, I returned.  
*Sono venuto*, I came.  
*Sono uscito*, I went out.

Some Verbs are conjugated with either *Avere*, or *essere*; as,

*Fuggire*, to fly from, or shun.  
*Salire*, to go up.  
*Incontrare*, to meet  
*Scendere*, to come down.

#### EXAMPLES.

*Ho fuggito i miei nemici*, I fled from my Enemies.  
*Son fuggito da' miei nemici*, I am shunned by my Enemies.  
*Ho salito questo monte*. I went up this Mountain.  
*Sono salito a piedi*, I went up a-Foot.  
*Ho incontrato mio fratello*, I met my Brother.

*Mi*

*Mi sono incontrato in mio fratello*, I met my Brother.

*Ho sceso il monte*, I came down the Hill.

*Sono sceso solo*, I came down alone.

*Mi son fatto male*, or *mi ho fatto male*, I have hurt my self.

*Of Verbs Impersonal.*

Verbs Impersonal are so called, first, because they are often used to express natural Actions that have no Relation to any Man's Person; as, *gela*, it freezes; *fa caldo*, it is hot: And, secondly, because they are conjugated by the third Person singular only.

Verbs Impersonal are of three Sorts; viz. 1<sup>st</sup>, those that are absolutely and properly such; as, *accade*, it happens; *basta*, it is enough; *bisogna*, one must; *neve*, it snows. 2<sup>dly</sup>, Those which are active or neuter Verbs, impersonally used by the help of the Particle *si*; as, *si ama*, they love; *si scrive*, they write; *si dice*, they say. And, 3<sup>dly</sup>, others which have great Affinity with reciprocal Verbs, and are conjugated with the Pronouns Conjunctive *mi*, *ti*, *gli*, or *le*, *ci*, *vi*, as, *mi duole*, *ti duole*, *gli* or *le duole*.

The Verbs absolutely Impersonal are,

*Accade*

*Avviene*,

*Basta*, it is enough,

*Bisogna*, one must.

} It happens.

*Grandina*, it hails.

*Nevica*, it snows.

*Pare*, it seems.

*Piove*, it rains.

*Lampeggia*, it lightens.

*Tuona*, it thunders, &c. which are conjugated by the third Person Singular, through all Moods and Tenses, according to the Conjugation they are of; as,

*Nevicare*, to snow.

Indicative, Present. *Nevica*, it snows.

Imperfect. *Nevicava*, it did snow.

Definite. *Nevicò*, it snowed.

Perfect. *Ha nevicato*, it hath snowed.

First Pluperfect. *Aveva nevicato* } it had snow-

Second Pluperfect. *Ebbe nevicato* } ed.

Future. *Nevicherà*, it will snow.

Imperative. *Che nevichi*, let it snow.

Conjunctive, Present. *Che nevichi*, that it snow.

First Imperfect. *Nevicherebbe*, it would, could, or should snow.

Second Imperfect. *Nevicasse*, it snowed.

Perfect. *Abbia nevicato*, it hath snowed.

First Pluperfect. *Averebbe nevicato* } it had snow-

Second Pluperfect. *Avesse nevicato* } ed.

Future. *Averà nevicato*, it shall have snowed.

Infinitive. *Nevicare*. to snow; *aver nevicato*, to have snowed.

Par-

Participle . *Nevicato*, snowed.

Gerund. *Nevicando*, snowing.

The Participle *si*, that composes the second Sort of Impersonal Verbs, is put indifferently either before, or after the Verbs; as, *si ama*, or *amasi*, they love; *si dice*, or *dicesi*, they say. In this manner all active Verbs may become Impersonal. They are conjugated in *Italian* by the third Persons singular and plural; as,

*Amare*, to love.

Indicative. *Amasi* or *si ama*, *amansi* or *si amano*, they love. *Amavasi* or *si amava*, *amavansi* or *si amavano*, *amossi* or *si amò*, *amaronsi* or *si amarono*, they loved. And so of the rest through all Moods and Tenses.

*Bisogna*, one must.

Indicative. *Bisogna*, *bisognava*, *bisognò*, *bisognerà*.

Conjunctive. *Che bisogni*, *bisognerebbe*, *bisognasse*.

This Verb is used several Ways in *Italian*.

*First*, Before the Conjunctive Mood, with the Particle *Che*, which Conjunctive is rendered in *English* by the Infinitive; as *bisogna che io vada*, I must go; *bisogna che tu legga*, thou must read; *bisogna che egli mangi*, he must eat; *bisognerebbe che io andassi*, I should go.

*Secondly*, It is used before the Infinitive Mood, either in an indeterminate Signification; as, *bi-*

*fogna far ciò*, that must be done; or with these Personal Pronoun, *mi, ti, gli, or le, ci, vi*; as, *mi bisogna partire*; I must be gone; *ci bisogna aver pazienza*, we must have Patience; *gli bisognò lasciare i suoi amici*, he was forced to leave his Friends.

*Thirdly*, It is sometimes used at the End of a Sentence, in this manner; *voi fate quel che bisogna*, you do what you should do, or what do, or what is fitting.

*Fourthly*, It is used before Substantives, either absolutely, or with these Pronouns Personal, *mi, ti, gli, or le, ci, vi, loro*; but then the Verb *bisognare* agrees with the Substantive, and it is used in the third Person plural, if the Substantive be of that Number; as, *bisognano danari per fare la guerra*, Money must be had to make War; *mi bisogna del pane*, I must have Bread; *ci bisognano cavalli*, we must have Horses.

*How to express in Italian, there is, there was, &c.*

*There is*, in *Italian* is expressed two Ways, viz. by *c'è*, when we speak of a Place where we are present; ex. *non c'è fuoco in questa camera*, there is no Fire in this Room; and by *v'è*, when we speak of a Place where we are not present; *ieri andai all'opera, ma il Re non vi fu*, Yesterday I went to the Opera, but the King was not there.

To

To render it more easy, I put here the Conjugation of the Verb *essere*, with the Adverb *ci* and *vi*.

*Conjugation of the Impersonal Verb essere, to be with the Adverbs ci, and vi.*

*Indicative Present.*

Near, with <i>ci</i> .	Distant, with <i>vi</i> .
There is, <i>c'è</i> , or <i>ci sono</i> .	<i>v'è</i> , or <i>vi sono</i> ?
Is there? <i>c'è?</i> or <i>ci sono?</i>	<i>v'è?</i> or <i>vi sono?</i>
There is not, <i>non c'è</i> , or <i>non ci sono</i> .	<i>non v'è</i> , or <i>non vi sono</i> .
There is some, <i>cen'è</i> , <i>cene sono</i> ,	<i>ven'è</i> , <i>vene sono</i> .
There is none, <i>non cen'è</i> , <i>non cene sono</i> .	<i>non ven'è non vene sono</i> .

*Imperfect.*

There was, <i>c'era</i> , or <i>c'erano</i> ,	<i>v'era</i> , <i>v'erano</i> .
There was not, <i>non c'era</i> , <i>non c'erano</i> .	<i>non v'era</i> , <i>non v'erano</i> .
There was some, <i>cen'era</i> , <i>cen'erano</i> ,	<i>ven'era</i> , <i>ven'erano</i> .
There was none, <i>non cen'era</i> , <i>non cen'erano</i> .	<i>non ven'era</i> , <i>non ven'erano</i> .

*Definite.*

There was, <i>ci fu, ci furono.</i>	<i>vi fu, vi furono,</i>
There was not, <i>non ci fu, non ci furono,</i>	<i>non vi fu, non vi furono.</i>
There was some, <i>cene fu, cene furono.</i>	<i>vene fu, vene furono.</i>
There was none, <i>non cene fu, non cene furono.</i>	<i>non vene fu, non vene furono.</i>

*Preterperfect.*

There has been, <i>c'è stato, ci sono stati.</i>	<i>v'è stato, vi sono stati.</i>
There has not been, <i>non c'è stato, non ci sono stati,</i>	<i>non v'è stato, non vi sono stati.</i>
There has been some, <i>cen'è stato, cene sono stati.</i>	<i>ven'è stato, vene sono stati.</i>
There has been none, <i>non cen'è stato, non cene sono stati.</i>	<i>non ven'è stato, non vene sono stati.</i>

*Pluperfect.*

There had been, <i>c'era stato, c'erano stati,</i>	<i>v'era stato, v'erano stati.</i>
There had not been, <i>non c'era stato, non c'erano stati.</i>	<i>non v'era stato, non v'erano stati.</i>
There had been some, <i>cen'era stato, cen'erano stati.</i>	<i>ven'era stato, ven'erano stati.</i>

*Fut-*

## Future.

There will be, <i>ci sarà,</i>	<i>vi sarà, vi saranno.</i>
<i>ci saranno.</i>	
There will not be, <i>non</i>	<i>non vi sarà, non vi sa-</i>
<i>ci sarà, non ci saranno.</i>	<i>ranno.</i>
There will be some, <i>ce-</i>	<i>vene sarà, vene saranno.</i>
<i>ne sarà, cene saranno.</i>	
There will be none, <i>non</i>	<i>non vene sarà, non veno</i>
<i>cene sarà, non cene sa-</i>	<i>saranno.</i>
<i>ranno.</i>	

And so in all the other Tenses.

## C H A P. VI.

## Of Participles.

A Participle is a Part of Speech, so called, because it partakes something of the Nature of a Noun, and something of that of a Verb.

A Participle is twofold, *viz. Active and Passive.*

The *Participle Active*, is either Present, or Preter (or Past.) The Present is simple, and always ends in *ante*, or in *ente*; as, *amante, leggente*. The Participle Preter or Past, is compounded of the Participle Present of the Auxiliaries, *viz. avendo, essendo*, and the Participle Passive of every Verb; as, *avendo amato*, having loved; *essendo arrivato*, being arrived.

The

The Participle Passive ends in *ato* in the first Conjugation; as, *amato*, *portato*, *cantato*; except *fare*, that makes *fatto*.

The regular Verbs of the Second Conjugation, make their Participles in *uto*; as, *areduto*, *temuto*, *ricevuto*, *goduto*. But the Verbs irregular have different Terminations, viz. in

<i>Anto</i> ;	<i>piango</i> ,	<i>pianfi</i> ,	<i>pianto</i> ,	<i>piangere</i> .
<i>Arso</i> ;	<i>spargo</i> ,	<i>sparsi</i> ,	<i>sparso</i> ,	<i>spargere</i> .
<i>Aso</i> ;	<i>rimango</i> ,	<i>rimafi</i> ,	<i>rimaso</i> ,	<i>rimanere</i> .
<i>Ato</i> ;	<i>nasco</i> ,	<i>nacqui</i> ,	<i>nato</i> ,	<i>nascere</i> .
<i>Elto</i> ;	<i>sceglia</i> ,	<i>scelsi</i> ,	<i>scelto</i> ,	<i>scegliere</i> .
<i>Ento</i> ,	<i>spegno</i> ,	<i>spensi</i> ,	<i>spento</i> ,	<i>spegnere</i> .
<i>Erso</i> ;	<i>dispergo</i> ,	<i>dispersi</i> ,	<i>disperso</i> ,	<i>dispergere</i> .
<i>Eso</i> ;	<i>difendo</i> ,	<i>difesi</i> ,	<i>difeso</i> ,	<i>difendere</i> .
<i>Esso</i> ;	<i>metto</i> ,	<i>misi</i> ,	<i>messo</i> ,	<i>mettere</i> .
<i>Esto</i> ;	<i>chiedo</i> ,	<i>chiesi</i> ,	<i>chiesto</i> ,	<i>chiedere</i> .
<i>Into</i> ;	<i>cingo</i> ,	<i>cinfi</i> ,	<i>cinto</i> ,	<i>cingere</i> .
<i>Iso</i> ;	<i>divido</i> ,	<i>divisi</i> ,	<i>diviso</i> ,	<i>dividere</i> .
<i>Itto</i> ;	<i>affliggo</i> ,	<i>afflissi</i> ,	<i>afflitto</i> ,	<i>affliggere</i> .
<i>Iuto</i> ;	<i>accresco</i> ,	<i>accrebbi</i> ,	<i>accresciuto</i> ,	<i>accreocere</i> .
<i>Olto</i> ;	<i>colgo</i> ,	<i>colsi</i> ,	<i>colto</i> ,	<i>cogliere</i> .
<i>Orso</i> ;	<i>corro</i> ,	<i>corsi</i> ,	<i>corso</i> ,	<i>correre</i> .
<i>Orto</i> ;	<i>accorgo</i> ,	<i>accorsi</i> ,	<i>accorto</i> ,	<i>accorgere</i> .
<i>Oso</i> ;	<i>nascondo</i> ,	<i>nascosi</i> ,	<i>nascoso</i> or <i>nascosto</i> ,	<i>nascondere</i> .
<i>Osto</i> ;	<i>pongo</i> ,	<i>posi</i> ,	<i>posto</i> ,	<i>ponere</i> or <i>porre</i> .
<i>Otto</i> ;	<i>cuoco</i> ,	<i>coffi</i> ,	<i>cotto</i> ,	<i>cuocere</i> .
<i>Unto</i> ;	<i>giungo</i> ,	<i>giunfi</i> ,	<i>giunto</i> ,	<i>giugnere</i> .
<i>Uso</i> ;	<i>chiudo</i> ,	<i>chiusi</i> ,	<i>chiuso</i> ,	<i>chiudere</i> .
<i>Utto</i> ;	<i>struggo</i> ,	<i>strussi</i> ,	<i>strutto</i> ,	<i>struggere</i> .

Note,

Note, That all these different Terminations are for the Verbs in *ere* short; because all the Participles of the Verbs in *ere long* do terminate in *uto*; as, *saputo*, *bevuto*: Except these, *persuaso*, *rimaso*, *solito*, *parso*, from *persuadere*, *rimanere*, *solere*, *parere*.

In order to form the Participles of the Verbs in *ere* short, you must observe what follows.

1. The Verbs in *do*, and in *ro*, make *fi* in the Definite, and *so* in the Participle.

*Ardo*, *arfi*, *arso*, *ardere*, to burn.

*Chiudo*, *chiufi*, *chiuso*, *chiudere*, to shut.

*Decido*, *decifi*, *deciso*, *decidere*, to decide.

*Corro*, *corfi*, *corso*, *correre*, to run.

*Scorro*, *scorfi*, *scorso*, *scorrere*, to run over.

2. Those in *co*, *go*, *glio*, and *vo*, make *fi* and *to*; as,

*Vinco*, *vinfi*, *vinto*, *vincere*, to overcome.

*Cingo*, *cinsi*, *cinto*, *cingere* and *cignere*, to gird.

*Porgo*, *porfi*, *porto*, *porgere*, to reach.

*Spegno* and *spengo*, *spenfi*, *spento*, *spegnere*, to extinguish.

*Sorgo*, *sorfi*, *sorto*, *forgere*, to rise.

*Volgo*, *volfi*, *volto*, *volgere*, to turn.

*Colgo*, *colfi*, *colto*, *cogliere*, to gather.

*Tolgo* or *Toglio* } *tolfi*, *tolto*, *togliere*, to take away.

3. When the Termination of these Verbs is pure, that is to say, when there is a Vowel before *do*,

*do, co, go, glio, &c.* the *f* is doubled in the Definite, and by Consequence the *f* or the *t* in the Participle; as,

*Concedo, concessi, concesso, concedere*, to grant.

*Cuoco, cossi, cotto, cuocere*, to bake.

*Dico, dissi, detto, dire* for *dicere*, to say.

*Muovo, mossi, mosso, muovere*, to move.

*Scrivo, scrissi, scritto, scrivere*, to write.

*Vivo, vissi, vissuto* and *vivuto, vivere*, to live.

4. Those in *ggo* and *tto*, double also the *f* in the Definite, and the *t* in the Participle, because of the double Consonant of the Indicative; as,

*Leggo, lessi, letto, leggere*, to read.

*Friggo, frissi, fritto, friggere*, to fry.

*Traggo, trassi, tratto, trarre*, to draw.

*Metto, messi, messo, mettere*, to put.

*Rifletto, riflessi, riflesso, riflettere*, to reflect.

*Commetto, commessi, commesso, commettere*, to commit.

5. The *n* is often lost in the Definite, and Participle, particularly in Verbs in *ndere*; as,

*Fondo, fusi, fuso, fondere*, to melt.

*Prendo, presi, preso, prendere*, to take.

*Scendo, scesi, sceso, scendere*, to come down.

*Spendo, spesi, speso, spendere*, to spend.

*Tendo, tesi, teso, tendere*, to stretch.

*Nascondo, nascosi, nascoso, and nascosto, nascondere*, to hide.

The

The Verbs of the third Conjugation in *Ire*, make their Participle in *Ito*; as, *sentire*, *sentito*; *finire*, *finito*: Except, *Apparire*, *apparso*; *coprire*, *coperto*; *aprire*, *aperto*; *comparire*, *comparso*; *dire*, *detto*; *morire*, *morto*; *offerire*, *offerto*, *venire*, *venuto*.

All the Participles of the first Conjugation are formed of the Infinitive, by striking off *re*, and adding *to*; as, *amare*, *amato*; of the second Conjugation, by striking off *ere*, and adding *uto*; as, *credere*, *creduto*; and of the third Conjugation, by striking off *re*, and adding *ito*; as, *sentire*, *sentito*; and as for the Use of them, we shall speak of it in the Syntax.

## C H A P. VII.

### *Of Adverbs.*

**A**N Adverb is a Part of Speech, which is generally put before or after Verbs, and is sometimes joined with Nouns, to express their different Circumstances, or fill up their Signification; ex. *Parlar bene*, to speak well; *scrivere male*, to write ill; *esser spesso ammalato*, to be often sick; *cantare perfettamente*, to sing to Perfection.

Some Adverbs are expressed in one word; as, *bene*, well; *male*, ill; *spesso*, often. Some consist

sist of a Preposition and a Noun ; as , *all'improvviso* , unawares ; in *disparte* , apart ; *alle volte* , sometimes , &c.

There are several Sorts of Adverbs ; as , of Time , of Place , of Quantity , or Quality , &c. One cannot give a general Rule about the forming of the Adverbs. Those that mark Quality , are generally form'd of an Adjective Feminine , by adding *mente* ; so of *dotta* is formed the Adverb *dottamente* , learnedly ; from *sana* , *sanamente* , wholesomely , &c.

They are formed also of the Superlative Feminine ; as , *dottissima* , *dottissimamente* , most learnedly .

However , I would not make it a general Rule , because all Adverbs are not formed of the Adjectives ; nor are all Adjectives proper to form Adverbs .

If Nouns Adjective end in *le* or *re* , you must take off the last *e* , and put *mente* instead of the *e* ; as , *crudel* , cruel , *crudelmente* , cruelly ; *mortal* , mortal , *mortalmente* , mortally ; *particolare* , particular , *particolarmente* , particularly , &c.

We have in our Language several Adjectives , which , without changing them , serve as Adverbs ; as , *forte* , for *fortemente* , strongly ; *dolce* , for *dolcemente* , sweetly ; *certo* for *certamente* , certainly ; *seave* for *soavemente* , agreeably .

*Adverbs*

*Adverbs of Time.*

*Hor, hora, adesso, now.*

*Prima, before.*

*Ultimamente, lately.*

*Nuovamente, } newly.*

*Di fresco, }*

*Poco fa, } not long since or ago.*

*Guari, }*

*Da indi innanzi, hereafter, henceforth.*

*All' avvenire, for the future.*

*Fra poco, shortly.*

*Da qui a due mesi, in two Months.*

*Sempre, always.*

*Mai, never.*

*Per sempre, always, for ever.*

*Spesso, often.*

*Di rado, seldom.*

*Subito, immediately, or forthwith.*

*Oggi, to Day.*

*Ieri, Yesterday.*

*Avantieri, or } the Day before Yesterday.*

*Ier l' altro, }*

*Ier sera, Yesternight, or last Night.*

*Iermattina, Yesterday Morning.*

*Domani, To Morrow.*

*Domattina, To Morrow Morning.*

*Posdomani, after to Morrow.*

*Altre volte, } formerly, of old.*

*Già, }*

*Ad*

*Ad ogni momento*, every Moment.

*Ogni giorno*, every Day.

*Giornalmente*, daily.

*Frattanto*, in the mean while.

*Per tre giorni*, during three Days.

*Digià*, already.

*Non ancora*, not yet.

*Di notte*, in the Night-time.

*Di giorno*, in the Day-time.

*Tardi*, late.

*Di buon ora*, betimes.

*Di buon' mattino*, early.

*Tosto*, soon.

*Di nuovo*, again.

*Quando*, when.

*Testè*, just now.

*Presto*, quickly.

*Ancora*, yet.

*Allora*, then.

*Poi*, then.

*Dipoi*, since.

*Di qua a poco*, in a little time.

#### R E M A R K S.

*Note*, That the same Adverbs of Interrogation, may serve also to answer, ex.

*Quando andrai?* When shall you go?

*Quando potrò*, when I can.

*Quanto starai?* how long will you stay?

*Quanto vorrai*, as long as you will.

*Quan-*

*Quando* is sometimes a conditional Particle that signifies *if*; as, *quando tu voglia venire, averò cura, che niente ti manchi*, if you will come, I will take care, that you shall want nothing.

### *Adverbs of Place.*

Adverbs of Place are of two Sorts, some serve to ask, and some serve to answer.

There are but two Adverbs of Place, that serve to ask; *dove*, where; and *donde*, from whence; however, the different Particles, or Verbs of Motion or Rest, form six, which are;

*Dove sei?* Where are you?

*Dove vai?* Whither are you going?

*Donde vieni?* From whence come you?

*Verso dove andrai?* Towards what Place shall you go?

*Donde passerai?* By what Place shall you go?

*Fin dove andrai?* How far shall you go?

The same Adverbs *dove* and *donde*, which serve to ask, may serve also to answer, when they are Relatives to what preceeds.

*Dove sei?* Where are you? *Dove mi vedi*, where you see me.

*Donde passerai?* By what Place shall you go?

*Per donde passai hieri*, by the Place I went Yesterday.

P

Ove

*Ove sei?* Where are you?

To the Question *ove sei?* We answer with the following Adverbs.

<i>Qui</i> , there.	<i>Giù</i> , down.
<i>Qui</i> } here.	<i>Dietro</i> , behind.
<i>Qua</i> }	<i>Entro</i> } within.
<i>Costì</i> }	<i>Dentro</i> }
<i>Costà</i> } there, or thither.	<i>Fuori</i> , without.
<i>là</i> } there.	<i>Sotto</i> , under.
<i>lì</i> }	<i>Sopra</i> , upon.
<i>Pertutto</i> , every where.	<i>Vicino</i> , near.
<i>Su</i> , up.	<i>Ovunque</i> , every where.

*Donde vieni?* From whence come you.

To the second Question *donde vieni?* we answer with the following Adverbs, adding *di*, or *da*.

*Di qui* or *quinci*, from hence.  
*Di là* or *di là*, from thence.  
*Di costì*, *di costinci*, from thence.  
*Quindi* or *indi*, from thence.  
*D'altronde*, from another Place.  
*Di lontano*, from far.  
*D'appresso*, from-hard by.  
*Quinci su*, from above.  
*Quincentro*, from here within.

*Dove vai?* Where are you going?

To the Question *dove vai?* we answer with the following Adverbs.

*Qua*,

*Qua*, here.

*Là* or *colà*, there.

*Costà*, there.

*Lafsu*, above.

*Laggiù*, below.

*Costa-giù*, there below.

*Colafsu*, there above.

*Dentro*, within.

*Fuori*, without.

*Verso*, towards.

*Verso dove andrai?* Towards what Place shall you go?

To the Question *verso dove andrai*, we answer with the following Adverbs.

*Verso qua*, towards this Place.

*Verso là*, towards that Place.

*Verso la casa*, towards Home.

*Donde passerai?* by what Place shall you go?

To the Question *donde passerai*, we answer with the following Adverbs.

*Di qua*, this way.

*Di là*, that way.

*Note*, That we use also the Preposition *per* or *da*, either for to answer, or to ask. *Per dove passerai?* by what Place shall you go? *Per Firenze*, by *Florence*; *da Roma*, by *Rome*.

*Fin dove anderai?* How far shall you go?

To the Question *fin dove anderai?* we answer with these Adverbs.

*Fin qua*, to this Place.

*Fin là*, to that Place.

*Fin costà*, } as far as that, or thitherto.  
*Fin colà*, }

And with several others, that are proper to be joined with *fino*, which often becomes a Preposition; *fino a casa*, as far as home; *fino al mare*, as far as the Sea.

#### *Adverbs of Quantity.*

<i>Quanto</i> , how much.	<i>Tanto</i> , so much.
<i>Quanti</i> , how many.	<i>Altretanto</i> , as much.
<i>Troppo</i> , too much, too many.	<i>Al più</i> , at the most.
<i>Molto</i> , much, or a great deal.	<i>Almeno</i> , at least.
<i>Molti</i> , many.	<i>Per meno</i> , for less.
<i>Più, d'avantaggio</i> , more.	<i>Quasi</i> , almost.
<i>Meno</i> , less.	<i>Non molto</i> not much.
<i>Un pochettino</i> , but a little.	<i>Affatto</i> , quite.
<i>Niente affatto</i> , not all.	<i>Del tutto</i> , entirely.

#### *Adverbs of Number.*

*Una volta*, once.

*Due volte*, twice.

*Tre volte*, thrice, or three times.

*Tan-*

*Tante volte*, so many times.

*Molte volte*, several times.

*Quante volte?* how many times?

*Adverbs of Order.*

*Primieramente*, first, in the first Place.

*Secondariamente*, secondly, in the second Place.

*In terzo luogo*, thirdly, in the third Place.

*Sopra tutto*, above all.

*Al postutto*, altogether.

*In giro*, by turns.

*In ordine*, in order, orderly.

*In fine, alla fine*, in fine, at last.

*Alla fila*, in a File, one after another.

*Insieme*, together.

*Adverbs of Affirmation.*

*Certo, di certo,*  
*Per certo, certamente,* } certainly.

*Veramente, di vero,*  
*In vero, nel vero, in verità,* } truly, in truth.

*A fè*, in faith.

*Al sicuro*, certainly.

*Al fermo,*  
*Per fermo,* } assuredly.

*Bene, sì bene*, yes indeed.

*Sì,*  
*Mai sì,* } yes.

*In verità*, indeed, in truth.

*A dire il vero*, to speak the Truth.

*Perche no?* why not?

*Adverbs of Negation or Denial.**Non*, no.*Nè*, no, nor.

<i>Non mai</i> ,	}	never.
<i>Non giamai</i> ,		

<i>Per nulla</i> ,	}	by no means.
<i>Per niente</i> ,		

*Miga*, *ne miga*, *non miga*, not at all.*In conto alcuno*, in no wise.*Adverbs of Doubt.*

<i>Forse</i> ,	}	perhaps, may be.
<i>Forse che</i> ,		

*Per avventura*, by chance.*Puo essere*, that may be.*Adverbs of Interrogation.*

<i>Che?</i>	}	why? what?
<i>Perche?</i>		

*Perche così?* why so?*Perche no?* why not?*Come?* how?*In che modo?* in what manner?*Adverbs of Reason.*

<i>Perche</i> ,	}	because.
<i>Perciocchè</i> ,		
<i>A causa che</i> ,		
<i>Imperocchè</i> ,		

Ad-

*Adverbs of Choice.*

*Più tosto,* } rather.

*Più presto,* } sooner.

*Meglio,* better, sooner.

*Sopra tutto,* above all.

*Anzi,* } rather.

*Prima,* } sooner.

*Adverbs of Comparison.*

*Come,* as like.

*Così,* so, thus.

*Più,* more.

*Meno,* less.

*Siccome,* as.

*A guisa,* like.

*A modo,* like.

*Vieppiù,* much more.

*Viemeno,* much less.

*Tanto,* } as much.

*Quanto,* }

*Adverbs of Demonstration.*

*Ecco,* there is, here is, or behold.

*Ecco qui,* here is.

*Ecco là,* there is.

*Adverbs of Excess.*

*Affai,* a great deal.

*Pur affai,* very much.

*Ecceffivamente,* excessively.

*Un mondo*, a World.

*Oltre ogni credenza*, beyond all Belief.

*Smisuratamente*, beyond Measure.

*Di gran lunga*, by far.

*Fuor di misura*, out of Measure.

*Adverbs of Exception or Restriction.*

*Solamente*, } only.

*Solo*,

*Purchè*, provided.

*Se non se*, except.

*Con patto che*, upon Condition.

*Fuori*,

*Eccetto*, } except.

*Salvo*,

*Adverbs of Confusion.*

*Confusamente*, confusedly.

*Alla rovescia*, the wrong way.

*Adverbs of Aggregation.*

*Insieme*, together.

*Unitamente*, jointly.

*Adverbs of Separation.*

*Separatamente*, separately.

*Da parte*, apart.

*Particolarmente*, } particularly, especially.

*In particolare*,

*Da se*, by it's self.

Ad-

*Adverbs of Design.*

*Apposta,*  
*A bello studio,* } on purpose, purposely.  
*A bella posta,* }  
*A disegno,* designedly.  
*Deliberatamente,* } considerately, advisedly.  
*Espressamente,* }  
*Da vero,* in good earnest.

*Adverbs of Rashness.*

*Alla stordita,* rashly, heedlessly.  
*Temerariamente,* rashly.  
*In fretta,* in haste.  
*Inconsideratamente,* at random, rashly.  
*Precipitatamente,* with Precipitation.

*Adverbs of Difficulty.*

*Appena,*  
*A mala pena,* } hardly, scarce.  
*A contro voglia,* } against one's Will.  
*Mal volentieri,* }

*Adverbs of Haste.*

*Presto,*  
*Subito,* } quickly.  
*Prontamente,* }  
*In fretta,* } in haste.  
*Frettolosamente,* }  
*In un subito,* on a sudden.

*Adverbs*

*Adverbs of Moderation.*

*Poco a poco*, by little and little, by degrees.

*Passo a passo*, Step by Step.

*Bel bello*, softly, gently.

*Adagio*, softly.

*Adverbs to express different Motions of the Body.*

*Inginocchiare*, upon one's Knees.

*Tentone*,  
*Brancolone*, } groping.

*Carpone*, upon all Fours.

*A pie*, on Foot.

*A cavallo*, on Horseback.

*A cavalcione*, a straddle.

*Boccone*, upon one's Belly.

*A rovescio*; upon one's Back.

*In sulla vita*, upright.

*Adverbs of Quality.*

*Cortesemente*, courteously.

*Debitamente*, deservedly.

*Giustamente*, justly.

*Infinitamente*, infinitely.

*Mediocrementemente*, indifferently.

*Bene*, well.

*Meglio*, better.

*Male*, ill.

*Peggio*, worse.

CHAP.

## C H A P. VIII.

*Of Prepositions.*

**A** Preposition is a Part of Speech which is put before Nouns; and sometimes before Verbs, &c. to explain some particular Circumstance.

Prepositions may be divided into Separable and Inseparable. An inseparable Preposition is never found but in compound Words, and signifies nothing of it self; such as, *di, dis, es*; ex. *dipendere*, to depend; *disfare*, to undo; *esporre*, to expose. A separable Preposition is generally separated from other Words, and signifies something of it self; as, *sopra*, upon; *sotto*, under.

The Inseparable Prepositions are,

*Arci*; *Arciduca*, an Arch-Duke.

*Di*; *dipendere*, to depend.

*Dis*; *disfare*, to undo.

*Es*; *esporre*, to expose.

*Fras*; *frastuono*, a great Noise.

*Inter*; *interporre*, to interpose.

*Intro*; *intromettere*, to meddle.

*Mis*; *misfatto*, a Crime.

*Pos*; *posporre*; to postpone.

*Pre*; *prevenire*, to prevent.

*Pro*; *promettere*, to promise.

*Ra*;

*Ra* ; *raccogliere*, to gather.

*Re* ; *respirare*, to breathe.

*Ri* ; *riprendere*, to take again.

*Ris* ; *risciacquare*, to rinse again.

*Sor* ; *sorridere*, to smile.

*Sos* ; *softenere*, to support.

*Sot* ; *sottomettere*, to submit.

These Prepositions have three Effects: Either to increase ; as, *Vescovo*, a Bishop ; *Arcivescovo*, an Archbishop: Or to diminish ; as, *rido*, I laugh ; *sorrido*, I smile : Or to change ; as, *pongo*, I put ; *pospongo*, I postpone.

*Dis*, serves to express the contrary of the Word it is joined to ; as, *dispiacere*, to displease ; *disfare*, to undo ; are the contrary of *piacere* and *fare*.

*Note*, That almost all Words composed of this Preposition may quit the *di*, and leave only the *s* ; as, *spiacere*, instead of *dispiacere*.

On the other Side, almost all the Words that begin with an *s*, may receive the *di*, or at least an *i* ; as, *spoglio*, *dispoglio*, I strip ; *sgombro*, *disgombro*, and *isgombro*, I empty. *Ra*, *Ri*, mark a Reiteration of the Action ; as, *raccogliere*, to gather again ; *ripigliare*, to retake, *risciacquare*, to rinse again.

Sometimes the Particle *ra* makes no Difference in the Signification of the primitive Word ; as, *rallentare*, *rassicurare*, *racquistare*, have the same Signi-

Signification of *allentare*, to slacken; *assicurare*, to assure; *acquistare*, to acquire.

Of separable Prepositions, some govern the Genitive, some the Dative, others the Accusative.

*Prepositions that govern the Genitive or Dative.*

*Accanto*, *allato*, by, near.

*Adosso* or *Addosso*, upon.

*A fronte* or *affronte*, over-against.

*All'incontro*, before, opposite, over-against.

*A piè* or *appiè*, at bottom

*A petto*, in Comparison, or over-against.

*A rimpetto* or *dirimpetto*, opposite, over-against.

*Prima*, before.

*Appresso*, by, or near.

*Avanti* or *avante*, before.

*Circa*, about.

*Contra*, against.

*Dentro*, within.

*Dietro*, behind.

*Davanti*, before.

*Fino* or *sino*, till, or until.

*Fuori*, without.

*Lungi* or *lunge*, far.

*Dinanzi*, } before.

*Innanzi*, }

*Oltre*, besides.

*Sotto*, under.

*Pre-*

*Prepositions that govern the Accusative or Genitive.**Dopo*, after.*Avanti*, before.*Con*, with.*In mezzo*, in the middle.*Da*, at, or to.*Contra*, against.*In*, in.*Nell, nella, nello*, in, or in the.*Dentro*, within.*Fuori*, without.*Dietro*, behind.*Sotto*, under.*Sopra*, upon.*Fra, tra*, between.*Verso*, towards.*Eccetto*, except.*Fuori*, without.*A lato*, by.*Rafente*, near.*Per*, for.*Presso, } by, or near.**Vicino, }**Senza*, without.*Secondo*, according.*Circa*, about.

CHAP.

CHAP. IX.

Of Conjunctions.

A Conjunction is a Part of Speech which serves to join, and connect the several Parts of a Discourse.

Conjunctions are divided into several Orders, of which some are,

*Conjunctions copulative, or to join.*

*E* or *et*, *ed*, and.

*Anche*, *anco*

*Ancora*, *eziandio*

} also, still, yet.

REMARKS.

*Et* is the Conjunction all Languages most frequently use. We use indifferently the Conjunction *e* or *et*, before the Words that begin with a Consonant, and *et* or *ed* before those that begin with a Vowel; although *ed* is better said than *et*.

In the Pronunciation, the *t* of the Word *et*, before a Word that begins with a Consonant, is never pronounced.

*E* sometimes is used instead of *nondimeno*, yet; as, *poco vedete*, *e parvi veder molto*, you see but little, and yet you think you see a great deal.

*Et*

*Et* or *ed* are placed at the Beginning of a Discourse, and they are expressed in *English* by *Both*; *ex.*

*Ed amici, e nemici, tutti mi sono egualmente contrarii*, both Friends and Foes are equally against me.

*Disjunctive, or to separate.*

*O, ovvero, o pure*, or.

*Ancorchè*, though.

*Nè*, neither, nor.

*Tampoco*, neither.

*Benchè*, }  
*Sebbene*, } although, or though.

# REMARKS.

When a Vowel follows, we write, *ed*; however, one may write, *o*, or *od*.

*Adversative, i. e. shewing some Contrariety.*

*Ma*, but.

*Pure*, yet, in the mean time.

*Nondimeno*, }  
*Intanto*, } however, yet.

*Pure, però*, }

*Tuttavia*, } yet, but still,

*Tutta volta*, }

*Nulladimeno*, nevertheless.

Com-

*Conditional.*

*Se*, if.

*Se mai*, if ever.

*Con patto*, *che*, upon Condition that.

*Con questo però*, upon this Condition.

*Quando*, } if.

*Ogni volta*, *che* }  
*Purchè*, } provided.  
*Tutte le volte che*, }

*A meno che*, unless, except.

*Causal, or giving Reason of what is said.*

*Che*, *perchè*, } because.  
*Perocchè*, *perciocchè*, }

*Affinche*, that, to the end that.

*Illatives.*

There is no other Difference between the Conjunctions causal and illative, but only that the first always preceeds the Reason of what is said, and the others, on the contrary, are always preceeded by them.

*Adunque*, *dunque*, then.

*Perciò*, }  
*Onde*, } therefore.  
*Laonde*, }

*Per la qual cosa*, therefore.

*Per conseguenza*, by Consequence.

*Dunque*, is placed sometimes at the Beginning  
of

q

of a Discourse, and implies a certain disdainful Reproach; Ex.

*Dunque sard io sempre accieato dal tuo amore!*  
What, shall I be always blinded by your Love!

*Final, or giving Reason why we do a Thing.*

*Acciocchè,* } that, to the End that.  
*Affine* }

*Che,* that.

*Per,* for, in order to.

*Conclusive.*

*Dunque,* therefore, then.

*Di maniera che,* so that.

*Però,* } therefore.  
*Laonde,* }

*Perciò,* therefore.

*Continuative.*

*Del resto,* as for the rest.

*Hora,* now.

*Poichè,* } since.  
*Posciachè,* }

*In guisa che,* } so as, in like wise.  
*In maniera che,* }

*Ma se,* but if.

*Se non,* save, but, if not.

*Note,* by the way, that *Conjunctive* are oftentimes confounded with the *Adverbs*, and that they have several other Names, according to the several Senses they are used in.

C H A-

C H A P. X.

*Of Interjections.*

**T**HE Interjection is a Part of Speech that serves to express the sudden Motions and Transports of the Soul.

There are several Sorts of Interjections ; such as,

*Of Joy.*

*Ha! ha! ha! ha! ha!*

*Orsù, animo, come, come on.*

*O che allegrezza! oh Joy!*

*Su, allegramente. come be chearful.*

*Of Grief.*

*Abi! ah! alas! ah!*

*Oime! alas!*

*Oime lasso! } alas poor me!*  
*Lasso me! }*

*Me misero! poor Wretch that I am!*

*Oh Dio! oh, my God!*

*Of Pain.*

*Ai! oh! oh! oh oh!*

*To encourage.*

*Animo, su, come, come.*

*Orsu, via,*

*Su via, come on.*

q z To

*To warn.*

*Badate a voi,*  
*State in cervello,* } have a care.

*Pian piano,* softly.  
*Fermati, olà,* hold, hold.

*To call.*

*Olà,* ho there, ho hey,  
*Chi è là?* who is there?

*Of Admiration.*

*O! vedi!* lack-a-day! see!  
*Cappita!* ay, marry.

*Of Aversion.*

*Oibò,* fie, fough,  
*Eb va via,* fie upon you.

*Of Silence.*

*St, zitto,* hush, st.  
*Silenzio,* Silence.  
*Tacete,* Peace there.

CHAP.

*Of the Syntax.*

**T**HE Syntax or Construction is the last Part of Grammar, which treats of the due ordering of the several Parts of Speech, towards the regular Composition of Sentences or Phrases.

## A R T I C L E I.

*Of the Construction of Articles.*

Although what I have said already in the foregoing Chapter about Articles, and the Declension of Nouns, may be sufficient; yet the right using those Particles being one of the greatest Niceties of the *Italian* Tongue, I shall endeavour to make the whole Matter as plain as possible, by the following Observations.

*First* OBSERVATION.

We use the Articles, *il, la, i, le*, with their oblique Cases, *del, della, al, alla, dal, dalla*, before Nouns, which are taken sometimes in a *Definite*, and sometimes in an *Indefinite* Sense.

## E X A M P L E S.

*Of a Definite Sense.*

*L'uomo, che vedete* the  
Man you see.

*La donna che voi amate,*  
the Woman you love.

*Of an Indefinite Sense.*

*L'uomo è un animale ra-*  
*gionevole,* Man is a  
rational Animal.

*La donna è stata creata*  
per

q 3

*I figliuoli di mia padre,*  
my Father's Children.  
*Parlo del libro, che m'ave-*  
*rete mandato, I speak*  
of the Book you have  
sent me.

*Ricordatevi della promes-*  
*sa, che m'avete fat-*  
*ta, remember the*  
Promise you made  
me.

*Ho parlato di voi al Prin-*  
*cipe, ed alla Princi-*  
*peffa, I spoke of you*  
to the Prince and  
Princess.

*Ci ha fatto la descrizio-*  
*ne delle città d'Ita-*  
*lia, he gave us the*  
Description of the  
Cities of Italy.

*Ne parlerò agli miei a-*  
*mici, I will speak of*  
it to my Friends.

*Un buon capitano, è a-*  
*mato da' suoi soldati, a*  
good Captain is be-  
loved by his Soldi-  
ers.

*per ajuto dell'uomo,*  
the Woman was  
created for a Help  
to Man.

*I figliuoli devono ubbi-*  
*dire a' loro Parenti,*  
Children ought to  
obey their Parents.

*Ho bevuto del vino a*  
*pranzo, I drank some*  
Wine at Dinner.

*Gli uni sono dediti al vi-*  
*zio, gli altri alla vir-*  
*tù, some are given to*  
Vice, some to Virtue.

*Il favore de' Principi è*  
*incerto, the Favour*  
of Princes is uncer-  
tain.

*Bisogna parlar con ris-*  
*petto alle dame, one*  
must speak respect-  
fully to the Ladies.

*Dalle disgrazie altrui,*  
*dobbiamo imparare ad*  
*evitarle, from other*  
Men's Misfortunes,  
we ought to learn  
how to shun them.

Second

Second OBSERVATION.

The Articles, *di, a, da*, are either Definite, or Indefinite, according to the Signification of the Nouns they are joined to.

E X A M P L E S.

*Of a Definite Sense.*

*La potenza di Dio è grande*, God's Power is great.

*Ho detto a Pietro, che*, I told Peter, that.

*Abbiamo parlato di voi stamattina*, we spoke of you this Morning.

*Ho inteso da mia sorella, che*, I have heard from my Sister, that.

*Of an Infinitive Sense*

*E' un comando di Re*, it is a King's Command.

*Non ne parlerò a nessuno*, I shall speak of it to no Body.

*Iddio ci liberi da male*, God deliver us from Evil.

*Da chi l'avete inteso?* of whom have you heard it?

Third OBSERVATION.

Nouns expressing an ordinal Number, have the Articles, *il, la, i, le*; as,

*Io sono il primo*, I am the first; *tu sei il secondo*, thou art the second; *ella è la terza*, she is the third.

But when a proper Name goes before the ordinal Number, then the Article is suppressed in Italian; as.

*Giorgio secondo*, George the Second; *Carlo Primo*, Charles the First; *Luigi decimo quarto*, Lewis the Fourteenth.

#### Fourth OBSERVATION.

Pronouns Possessive Conjunctive have the Articles, *il, la, i, le*; as, *il mio libro*, my Book; *la mia casa*, my House; *i miei libri*, my Books; *le mie biancherie*, my Linnen. But if the Possessive follow the Substantive, the Article is suppressed; as, *questa casa è mia*, this house is mine.

*Note*, That these Pronouns, followed by Nouns of Quality or Kindred, have the Articles *di, a, da*, in the Singular; but in the Plural they have *i, le, de, delle, a, alle, da, dalle*; ex. *mio fratello*, my Brother; *di mio fratello*, of my Brother; *da mio fratello*, from my Brother; *i miei fratelli*, my Brothers; *a' miei fratelli*, to my Brothers, &c. *mia sorella*, *di mia sorella*, &c. *le mie sorelle*, *delle mie sorelle*, &c. *vostra Maestà*, your Majesty; *di vostra Maestà*, of your Majesty; *a vostra Maestà*, to your Majesty; *da vostra Maestà*, from your Majesty; *le Maestà vostre*, your Majesties; *delle Maestà vostre*, *alle Maestà vostre*, &c.

Pronouns possessive absolute, require no Article before them; as, whose House is this? it is mine, it is thine, it is ours; *di chi è questa casa? è mia, è tua, è nostra*.

*Fifth*

*Fifth* OBSERVATION.

The Articles *il*, *la*, *i*, *le*, are rendered in *English* by the Article *a* or *an* in the following and like Expressions; *egli fa il filosofo*, he sets up for a Philosopher; *egli fa il grande*, he sets up for a Lord; *ella fa la dama*, she sets up for a Lady; *ella fa la modesta*, she affects the modest Woman.

*Sixth* OBSERVATION.

Names of Kingdoms, Provinces, Rivers, and Mountains, have generally the Articles *il*, *la*, *i*, *le*; as,

*La Francia è un potente regno*, France is a powerful Kingdom; *l'Italia è un paese molto ameno*, Italy is a very pleasant Country; *la Toscana è la sola Provincia d'Italia, dove si parla bene Italiano*, Tuscany is the only Province of Italy, where they speak good Italian; *il Tevere*, the Tiber; *il Tamigi*, the Thames; *le Alpi*, the Alps; *I Pirenei*, the Pyrenees.

But Names of Kingdoms and Provinces lose the Article after the Preposition *in*; ex. *Io vo in Francia*, I go into France; *egli dimora in Inghilterra*, he lives in England.

They are also declined with the Article *di* only; ex. *Io ritorno di Francia*, I return from France; *il regno di Portogallo*, the Kingdom of Portugal; *uno di Fiorenza*, Florence Wine:

Ho-

However, we say also, *Io parlo della Francia, dell'Italia*; I speak of France, of Italy.

Names of Mountains lose their Article after the Word *monte*; ex. *il monte Parnaso*, Mount Parnassus; *il monte Sinai*, Mount Sinai.

#### Seventh OBSERVATION.

Nouns of Quantity govern a Genitive Case with the Article *di*; ex. *una foglietta di vino*, a Pint of Wine; *un braccio di panno*, a Yard of Cloth; *un' ala di tela*, an Ell of Linnen; *uno stajo di grano*, a Bushel of Corn.

The Adverbs of Quantity, *a great deal*, *much* or *many*, take no Article, but become Adjectives in Italian, and agree with the Substantive in Gender, Number, and Case; ex. *ho bevuto molto vino*, I have drunk a great deal of Wine; *ha mangiato molta carne*, he has eat a great deal of Meat; *voi avete molti libri*, you have a great many Books.

#### Eighth OBSERVATION.

Before proper Names of Men or Women, and of Months, &c. we put the Articles *di*, *a*, *da*; as, *ho detto a Paolo*, I said to Paul.

An Adjective added for an Epithet or Nick-name to a proper Name, is always put in the Nominative Case with the Article *il* or *la*, let  
the

the Case of the proper Name be what it will; *io scrivo di Luigi il Grande*, I write of *Lewis* the Great; *Carlo il calvo*, Charles the bald.

The Article *il* or *la* is used sometimes before a Word that denotes a Quality added to proper Names, to distinguish a Person by one of his Qualities; as, *Lucrezia la casta*, Lucrece the chaste; *Elena la bella*, Helen the handsome.

We put also the Article before proper Names of Women; as, *la Faustina*, *la Cuzzoni*, *la Lauretta*, *la Fiammetta*.

It is used also before a proper Name, to express the Works of that Person; ex. *ho letto il Tasso con gran piacere*, I have read *Tasso* with a great deal of Pleasure; *il Petrarca mi piace molto*, I like *Petrarch* very much.

We say also, *il Cesare*, *l' Alessandero*, when we mean a Statue or a Picture of *Cesar* or *Alexander*.

Before Nouns appellative, we also put the Articles, *il*, *la*, *i*, *le*; as, *il duca*, the Duke; *il Principe*, the Prince; *la duchessa*, the Dutcheſs; *la Principessa*, the Princess; *il maestro*, the Master; *lo scolajo*, the Scholar.

Nouns of Degree or Honour before proper Names lose the Article; ex. *Papa Innocenzio decimo*, Pope *Innocent* the Tenth; *Monſignor Carlo*, my Lord *Charles*; *Madama Catterina*, my Lady *Catherine*; *Maestro Alberto*, Master *Albert*. But if those Nouns be put alone, without  
the

the Names of the Persons, then we must say, *il Papa*, *il Maestro*.

*Note*, That *Monsignore*, and *Madama*, are always followed by the Articles, when they are put before another Name of Quality; as, *Monsignore il Duca*, my Lord Duke; *Madama la Duchessa*, my Lady Dutcheſs; *di Monsignor il Duca*, of my Lord Duke; *di Madama la Duchessa*, of my Lady Dutcheſs.

Sometimes the Article *il* goes before a Verb of the Infinitive Mood; as, *il pentirsi da sezzo nulla giova*, it avails nothing to repent too late.

#### Ninth OBSERVATION.

To expreſs an uncertain Quantity, or Part of a thing, we use the Articles *del*, *della*; as, *datemi del pane*, give me some Bread; *dateci del vino*, *della carne*, give us some Wine, some Meat; *m' ha dato de' libri*, he has given me some Books. But if *poco*, little, be used, the Article *di* must follow; *datemi un poco di vino*, give me a little Wine: Except if after *poco* some Wine be specified; as, *un poco del bianco*, *un poco del rosso*, a little of white, a little of the red. We say *un fiasco di vino*, a Flask of Wine; *una scatola di tabacco*, a Box of Snuff; that is to say, full of Wine, full of Snuff; but if we will expreſs for what Use the Thing is, we say *da*; as, *un fiasco da vino*, a Wine Flask; *una scatola da tabacco*, a Snuff-Box.

*Note*,

*Note*, That we never express the Articles *del*, *della*, before an Infinitive coming after another Verb; as, *ho pane per vivere*, I have Bread to live; *egli ha talento a bastanza da condursi*, he has Wit enough to govern himself.

*Tenth* OBSERVATION.

The Articles *il*, *la*, *lo*, *i*, *le*, *gli*, and their oblique Cases, *del*, *della*, *dello*, *al*, *alla*, *allo*, *dal*, *dalla*, *dallo*, *di*, *a*, *da*, &c. are always put before the Substantives to which they belong; as, *il Rè*, the King; *la Regina*, the Queen; *lo Scolare*, the Scholar; *la volontà di Dio*, the Will of God; *l'esercito del Re*, the King's Army; *le miserie della vita umana*, the Miseries of human Life; *la vanità degli uomini*, the Vanity of Men.

When an Adjective goes before a Substantive, we place before it the Articles belonging to the Substantive; as, *il Gran Signore*, the Grand Seignior; *la Gran Brettagna*, Great Britain.

*Eleventh* OBSERVATION.

We repeat the Article in *Italian* before Substantives, when several of them come together before or after a Verb; whereas it is generally left out in *English*; as, *la clemenza, la liberalità, la generosità, il valore, il coraggio*, Clemency, Liberality, Generosity, Valour, Courage;  
i fa-

*i favori, e le grazie che ho ricevuto da voi*, the Favours and Kindnesses I have received from you; *ho comprato del pane, del vino, e della carne*, I have bought Bread, Wine, and Meat.

However, when we speak indefinitely of a Thing, without specifying the Quality or the Quantity of it, we use no Article; as, *io non ho conosciuto mai uomo più generoso*, I never knew a Man more generous than you; *egli ha prudenza a bastanza da condursi*, he has Prudence enough to behave himself; *voi mi dovete cento scudi, da semi vino in pagamento*, you owe me a hundred Crowns, give me Wine for it.

#### Twelfth OBSERVATION.

We put in *Italian* the Article before several Nouns that have none in *English*; as, *la virtù*, Virtue; *il Vizio*, Vice; *la clemenza*, Clemency; *la Temperanza*, Temperance; *l'orgoglio*, Pride; *la Francia*, France; *l'Inghilterra*, England.

#### Thirteenth OBSERVATION.

There are several Expressions in *Italian*, wherein the Article is suppressed; as, *aver fame*, to be hungry; *aver caldo*, to be hot; *parlare Italiano, Francese, Latino*, to speak Italian, French, Latin; *dar malleveria*, to give Security, or to put in Bail; *far Testimonianza*, to bear witness.

Four-

Fourteenth OBSERVATION.

Names of Towns have no Article in the Nominative nor Accusative, in the other Cases we use *di, a, da*; as, *Roma, di Roma, a Roma, da Roma*, Rome, of, to, from Rome, &c. Pronouns Personal, *io, tu, &c.* have the same Article; as, *io, I; di me, a me, da me*, of me, to me, from me.

ARTICLE II.

*Of the Construction of Nouns Substantive.*

When two Substantives come together, and one of them depends on the other, the second must be in the Genitive Case; *la gloria di Dio*, the Glory of God; *il Palazzo del Re*, the King's Palace; *i capelli del capo*, the Hair of the Head; *la palma della mano*, the Palm of the Hand.

Two or more Substantives of the singular Number, signifying different Things, being joined by a Conjunction, are equivalent to a Noun of the plural Number; as, *la fede, la speranza, e la carità sono le virtù Teologali*, Faith, Hope and Charity, are the Theological Virtues; *il Re, la Regina, e'l Principe sono le prime Persone del Regno*, the King, the Queen, and the Prince, are the first Persons of the Kingdom.

When

When two or more Substantives singular are joined together, and signify but one single Thing or Person, they require no more than a Verb or Noun singular; *Giorgio Secondo, Re della Gran Bretagna, ed Elettore di Brunswick, è un Principe valoroso, e magnanimo*, George the Second, King of Great Britain, and Elector of Brunswick, is a valiant and generous Prince.

### Of Adjectives.

There are four Things to be consider'd in Adjectives, whether Nouns, Pronouns, or Participles, with Relation to Substantives, viz. their Position, Gender, Number, and Case.

#### The Position of Adjectives.

Of Adjectives, some go before the Substantive, others after it; and others again, either before or after, indifferently.

The Adjectives that go before the Substantive, are,

*First*, The Adjectives of ordinal Numbers; ex.

*Egli è il primo monarca del mondo*, he is the first Monarch of the World; *voi siete la seconda persona che ho veduto oggi*, you are the second Person I have seen to Day.

#### Exceptions.

The adjective Ordinal is put after the Substantive; *first*, when joined to a proper Name; as,

as, *Carlo Primo*, Charles the First; *Giorgio Secondo*, George the Second: And, *secondly*, when we quote a Book, a Chapter, &c. as, *libro primo*, the first Book; *capitolo secondo*, the second Chapter.

*Note*, That when we use the Article, we may indifferently say *al libro primo*, or *primo libro*, in the first Book; and that speaking of Books; Chapters, &c. without quoting them, the Adjective goes before the Substantive, according to the Rule; as, *ho letto il primo libro della vostra Istoria*, I have read the first Book of your History.

*Secondly*, All conjunctive possessive Pronouns are put before the Substantive; ex. *il mio cappello*, my Hat; *il tuo mantello*, thy Cloak; *il suo libro*, his Book.

*Thirdly*, The following Adjectives do generally go before the Substantives, viz.

*Buono*, good.  
*Cattivo*, bad.  
*Grande*, great.  
*Picciolo*, little.  
*Bello*, handsome, fine.  
*Brutto*, ugly.  
*Grande*, genteel,  
*Povero*, poor.  
*Migliore*, better.  
*Ricco*, rich.

r

EXAM-

## EXAMPLES.

*Un buon uomo*, a good Man; *una buona donna*, a good Woman; *cattivo tempo*, bad Weather; *un gran Personaggio*, a great Person; *un piccolo ragazzo*, a little Child; *un bel viso*, a handsome Face; *un brutto colore*, an ugly Colour; *un galant' uomo*, a genteel Man; *un povero mestiere*, a poor Trade; *il migliore amico del mondo*, the best Friend in the World; *il più ricco mercante di Londra*, the richest Merchant in London. However, this Rule is subject to many Exceptions.

*First*, The forementioned Adjectives may be put after the Substantives, when one, two, or more Epithets are joined with them; as, *un uomo buono, e generoso*, a good and generous Man; *un Principe grande, e magnifico*, a great and magnificent Prince; *una donna bella, e ricca*, a handsome and rich Woman.

*Secondly*, When the same Adjectives relate also to a following Substantive, they are put after the first Substantive; as, *un giovane bello come un Angelo*, a Boy as handsome as an Angel.

The Adjectives that come after the Substantives, are,

Those that express a Colour; ex.

*Un fazzoletto bianco*, a white Handkerchief; *un cappello nero*, a black Hat; *vin rosso*, red Wine.

Se-

*Secondly*, All Participles of the Preterite, or past Tense; as, *un uomo conosciuto*, a known Man; *parole finte*, feigned Words; *una strada battuta*, a beaten Road.

*Thirdly*, Adjectives formed from Names of Nations; ex. *gentiluomo Italiano*, an Italian Gentleman, *una dama Inglese*, an English Lady; *un reggimento Italiano*, an Italian Regiment; *l'armata Inglese*, the English Fleet; *la gravità spagnuola*, Spanish Gravity.

*Fourthly*, Adjectives expressing a Quality of the Air, Weather and Elements, ex.

*Un tempo freddo*, a cold Season; *un luogo umido*, a damp Place; *un'aria pura*, a pure Air; *dell'acqua tiepida*, lukewarm Water.

*Fifthly*, Most Adjectives that may be used as Substantives; such as, *gobbo* hunch-backed; *zoppo*, lame; *cieco*, blind; *guercio*, squinting, &c. ex. *un gobbo*, or *un uomo gobbo*, a crooked Man; *una gobba*, or *una donna gobba*, a crooked Woman.

*Sixthly*, Adjectives ending in *ele*, or *ile*; ex.

*Un uomo crudele*, a cruel Man; *una donna fedele*, a faithful Woman; *atti puerili*, childish Actions.

*Seventhly*, The following Adjectives, and some others, are also generally put after the Substantive.

<i>Lungo</i> , long.	<i>Virtuoso</i> , virtuous.
<i>Corto</i> , short.	<i>Vizioso</i> , vicious.
<i>Neutro</i> , neuter.	<i>Pigro</i> , lazy.
<i>Generale</i> , general.	<i>Pauroso</i> , fearful.
<i>Particolare</i> , particular.	<i>Considerabile</i> , considerable.
<i>Singolare</i> , singular.	
<i>Intiero</i> , entire.	<i>Importuno</i> , troublesome.
<i>Languido</i> , languid.	

But this Rule is liable to Exceptions.

### First RULE of Adjectives.

The Adjective ought to agree with the Substantive in Gender, Number, and Case; as, *un gran giardino*, a great Garden; *una bella casa*, a fine House; *uomini valorosi*, valiant Men;  *cose umane*, human Things.

### Second RULE.

The Masculine Gender is accounted more noble than the Feminine; and therefore when two Substantives of different Genders, are the Nominative of the Verb *Essere*, or a passive Verb, the Adjective that follows ought to be of the Masculine Gender, and of the Plural Number; ex.

*Gli onori, e ricchezze sono ambiti da tutti*, Honours and Riches are sought by every Body; *il marito e la moglie sono tenuti d' amarsi scambievolmente*, Husband and Wife are obliged to love

love one another mutually; *il merito e la fortuna vanno raramente uniti*, Merit and Fortune seldom meet.

### *Of the Comparifon.*

Although I have fpoken at large of the Comparifon in the Analogy, yet it will not be amifs to make the following Observations.

*First*, Adverbs of Quantity; *più*, more; *meno*, lefs, which ferve to compare Subftantives; are to be followed by a Genitive Cafe; but the Article varies, according to the Subftantives that are compared.

We ufe the Article *del, della, de', delle*; if the Word *than* is followed by the Article *the*; or a Pronoun poffeffive, either abfolute or conjunctive; ex. nothing is brighter than the Sun, *niente è più chiaro del fole*; the Sun is brighter than the Moon, *il fole è più luminoso della luna*; your Book is handsomer than mine; *il vostro libro è più bello del mio*. Sometimes *the* is not expreffed in *English*; as, nothing is more amiable than Virtue; *non v'è cofa più amabile della virtù*. In this Cafe you muft obferve what I have faid in the eleventh Obfervation, under the Title of the Conftitution of Articles.

If after *than*, there is not the Article *the*, nor a Pronoun poffeffive, then we ufe the Article *di*;

as, *Peter is richer than Paul*, *Pietro è più ricco di Paolo*.

If the Word *than* has after it a Pronoun possessive, joined with a Noun that signifies Quality or Kindred, in the singular Number, we use the Article *di*; as, *happier than your Highness*, *più fortunato di vostra Altezza*; *handsomer than your Brother*, *più bello di vostro fratello*. But in the Plural we use *de'* or *delle*; as, *happier than your Highness*, *più felice delle Altezze vostre*; *handsomer than your Brothers*, *più bello de' vostri fratelli*.

If the Particle *than* is followed by an Adjective, a Verb, or an Adverb, it is expressed by *che*; as, *più lungo, che alto*, longer than high; *promette più che non attiene*, he promises more than he performs; *è meglio tardi che mai*, it is better later than never.

Adverbs of Quantity require the Article *di*; as, *ella ha più di venti anni*, she is more than twenty Years old; *ho speso poco meno di cento scudi*, I have spent little less than a hundred Crowns.

It is true, that sometimes *che* comes immediately after *più*, but then it signifies *but*, and not *than*; ex. *non ho più che cento scudi*, I have but an hundred Crowns; *non ha più che venti anni*, he is but twenty Years old.

The Adverbs *so*, *as much*, *so much*, *as*, are expressed in Italian by *che*, *quanto*, or *sì*; as,  
voi

*voi fete bello quanto lui*, you are as handsome as he; *voi non fete sì dotto, che lui*, you are not so learned as he; *ho tanti cavalli, che voi*, I have as many Horses as you.

### ARTICLE III.

#### *Of the Use of Pronouns.*

There are, as we said before, seven Sorts of Pronouns, *viz.* the Personal, Possessive, Demonstrative, Relative, Interrogative, Numeral, and Indefinite; upon which we shall make some useful Observations.

#### *Of Personal Pronouns.*

##### *First* OBSERVATION.

Personal Pronouns may be divided into conjunctive and indifferent. Conjunctive Personal Pronouns are the Nominatives of Verbs; such as, *io, tu, egli, ella, noi, voi, &c.* and the oblique Datives and Accusatives; such as, *mi, me, ci, ce, ti, te, vi, ve, lo, la, &c.*

All the rest of Personal Pronouns are indifferent; such as, *di me, a me, da me; di noi, a noi, da noi.*

##### *Second* OBSERVATION.

The Personal Pronouns that serve for the Nominative of a Verb, instead of a Substantive,

r      4      are

are these; *io, tu, egli, ella, noi, voi, eglino, elleno*; ex. *io amo, tu ami, egli, or ella ama*, I love, thou lovest, he or she loveth; *noi amiamo, voi amate, eglino or elleno amano*, we love, ye love, they love.

*Note*, That in using of Verbs, it is indifferent whether you add these Pronouns or not, since the Termination of Tenses shews the Person and the Number: However, if they are expressed, it is not a Fault. Moreover, we must consult the Ear, since by expressing the Pronouns, we give a greater Emphasis to the Discourse.

### Third OBSERVATION.

The Pronoun of the Nominative Case, is put after the Verb, in an Interrogation; as *conosci tu?* do you know? and in this short Phrase, *sì ti dich' io*, yes I tell you.

### Fourth OBSERVATION.

Through a Corruption of most Languages of Europe, we use the second Person plural instead of the singular, and we say *voi*, when we speak to a single Person; as, *voi siete prudente, e savio*, you are prudent and wise. The same is done with Pronouns possessive; *i vostro, i vostri*, yours, which are used instead of *il tuo, i tuoi*, they, or thine.

*Note,*

*Note*, That though we use the plural *voi*; when we speak to a singular Person, nevertheless the Adjective that relates to it, ought to be in the singular Number; ex. *voi sete ben venuto*, you are welcome.

*Note* also, That the Pronouns *voi* and *voſtro*, are used when we speak either to a familiar Friend, or to a Person very much below us: But when we speak in a ceremonial Way, or to a Person above us, we use the third Person singular, *lei*, *Voffignoria*, or *ella*, for both Genders; and the Pronoun possessive, *ſuo*, *ſuoi*, *ſua*, *ſue*; ex. *vuol ella*, or *lei*, or *Voffignoria favormi?* will you favour me? *ecco i ſuoi libri*, *il ſuo cappello*, there are your Books, your Hat.

#### Fifth OBSERVATION.

Conjunctive Personal Pronouns, that serve for the Dative or Accusative, are, *mi*, *me*, *ti*, *te*, *gli*, *ſi*, *ci*, *ce*, *vi*, *ve*, *lo*, *la*, &c. which are placed either before or after the Verb; ex. *vi dico*, or *dicovi*, I tell you; *mi ſcriſſe*, or *ſcriſſemi*, he wrote to me, &c.

*Note*, That when these Pronouns are put after any Tense of a Verb, that has an Accent over the last Letter, the Consonant of the Pronoun is doubled; ex. *mi mandò*, or *mandommi*, he sent me; *dirò*, or *dirovvi*, I shall tell you, &c.

All

All Verbs of one Syllable have naturally the Accent over the last Letter, and by Consequence, the Consonant of the Pronoun that is joined to them is doubled; ex. *egli fa*, he does, *fallo*, do it; *dà*, he gives; *dammi*, give me.

Note also, That though it is arbitrary to join these Pronouns to the Verbs, or to put them before; as, *amasi*, or *si ama*, *dicesi*, or *si dice*; *darotti*, or *ti darò*; yet in the Imperative, Infinitive and Gerund, they must be put after; for we cannot say *mi ama*, but *amami*, love me; *non posso vi amare*, but *non posso amarvi*, I cannot love you: Or else you must put the Pronoun before the Verb that governs the Infinitive; ex. *non vi posso amare*, and not before the Infinitive; *non posso vi amare*: And we cannot say *mi dando*, *vi dando*, but *dandomi*, *dandovi*, in giving me, in giving you.

As for the Infinitive, you must observe, that the last Vowel is always taken away when we join the Pronoun to it; ex. we say *amarmi*, *temervi*, *sentirci*, and not *amaremi*, *temerevi*, *sentireci*.

We say most commonly *se* one's self, for the Singular, and *si* themselves, for the Plural; *per celarse*, to hide himself; *per farsi amare*, to make themselves be loved.

Sixth

Sixth OBSERVATION.

The conjunctive Pronouns, *me*, *mi*, *te*, *ti*, *se*, *si*, *gli*, *le*, *ce*, *ci*, *ve*, *vi*, though they have the same Signification, yet they are used indifferently.

1. *Me*, *te*, *se*, serve for all the Cases; as, *di me*, *di te*, *di se*, *a me*, *a te*, *a se*, &c. *mi*, *ti*, *ci*, *vi*, serve only for the Dative and Accusative; by *si* only for the Accusative; *mi disse*, he told me; *ci vede*, he sees us; *ti diedi*, he gave thee, &c. *si crede*, he thinks himself. *Me*, *te*, *se*, are governed by the Article *di*, *a*, *da*, and by all Prepositions; as, *di me*, *di te*, *di se*, *a me*, *a te*, *a se*, &c. *contro me*, against me; *verso te*, towards thee; *per se*, for one's self; *mi*, *ci*, *ti*, *vi*, *si*, are governed by a Verb; as, *mi crede*, he believes me; *ci vede*, he sees us, &c.

*Me*, *te*, *se*, *ce*, *ve*, are joined to the Particles *lo*, *la*, *le*, *gli*, and the Particle relative *ne*; as, *me lo*, *me la*, *me le*, *me gli*, *me ne*; *te lo*, *te la*, *te le*, *te gli*, *te ne*; but generally we join them together; as, *ditemelo*, tell it me; *datemela*, give it me; *ditecelo*, tell it us; *vela manderò*, I will send it you; *mene ricordo*, I remember it; *sela mise in testa*, he put it upon his Head.

When we make an Opposition between two Persons, we say, *me*, *te*, without joining them  
to

to the Verb; as, *Ferir me in quello stato, e a voi armata non mostrar pur l'arco*, to wound me in that Condition, and, to you that was armed, not to shew even the Bow.

*Gli* before *lo*, *la*, *le*, *li*, *ne*, takes an *e*; as, *glielo*, *gliela*, &c. *glielo dirò*, I will tell it him; *gliela manderò*, I will send it her, &c.

The Pronoun Conjunctive *loro* goes always after the Verb; as, *io dissi loro*, I told them.

When *loro* is a Pronoun possessive, it requires the Article, *il*, *la*, *i*, *le*, before it; as, *il loro libro*, their Book; *i loro libri*, their Books; *la loro casa*, their House, *le loro case*, their Houses.

#### Seventh OBSERVATION.

The Pronouns, *egli* and *ella*, accompany the Gerund, when the Verb following depends on them; as, *scrivendo egli s'ingegnò di guadagnare*, &c. by writing he strove to gain, &c. *filando ella a poco a poco s'addormentò*, as she was spinning, she fell asleep: The same is understood of, *eglino*, and *elleno*: But if the Verb following is not governed by them, *lui*, *lei*, *loro*, are to be used: as, *cantando lui*, *io scrivevo*, as he was singing, I wrote; *venendo lei*, *tutti si fermarono*, as soon as she came, every Body stopt. The same Pronouns are also used with the Participle *come*, when Equality is signified; as, *costoro erano maliziosi come lui*,

*tui*, or *come lei*, or *come loro*; not *egli*, *ella*, *eglino*, or *elleno*, they were as malicious as he, she, they: But if *come* signifies *Similitude*, and not *Equality*, *egli*, *ella*, *eglino*, *elleno*, are used; as, *che direste voi, se io fossi nella via come egli* or *ella*? What would you say, if I was in the way as well as he or she?

#### *Eighth* OBSERVATION.

Some Personal Pronouns are called *Indifferent*, because they may either be joined to the Verbs, or be separate from them; as, *egli parla di me*, *di te*, he speaks of me, of thee, &c. *di chi parla?* *di me*, who does he speak of? of me.

#### *Of Pronouns Possessive.*

#### *First* OBSERVATION.

The Gender of Pronouns possessive in *Italian*, does not follow that of the Person that speaks, or is spoken of, but agrees with the particular Gender of every Noun they are joined to; ex. *mio padre*, my Father; *mia madre*, my mother; *suo fratello*, his or her Brother; *sua sorella*, his or her Sister.

#### *Second* OBSERVATION.

Sometimes these plural Pronouns, *i miei*, *i tuoi*, *i suoi*, *i nostri*, *i vostri*, signify one's Friends and Relations, or the People of one's Party;

Party; ex. *è andato verso i suoi, e non l'hanno conosciuto*, he went to his own, and they knew him not.

### Third OBSERVATION.

Sometimes these singular Pronouns, *il mio, il tuo, il suo, il nostro, il vostro, il loro*, signifie one's own Money or Estate; ex. *ho speso cento scudi del mio*, I spent a hundred Crowns of my own; *non spende niente del suo*, he spends none of his own Money.

As for the Regimen of these Pronouns, I spoke of them at large in the fourth Observation of the Chapter of Articles.

### Of Pronouns Demonstrative.

*Questo* and *quello* are proper, either for Persons or Things, and are declined like Adjectives, with the Article, *di, a, da*; as, *quest' uomo*, this Man; *questa donna*, this Woman; *quello scolare*, that Scholar; *quella signora*, that Lady.

*Questo*, shews the Person or Thing that is near us; *quel* or *quello*, shews a Person or Thing that is remote.

*Questi* and *quegli* or *quelli*, are often used alone, instead of *quest' uomo*; as, *questi a cavallo*, *quegli a piedi*, the one on Horseback, the other a Foot.

Before *mane* or *mattina*, *sera* or *notte*, we say, *sta*, instead of *questa*; as, *stamane*, or *sta-*  
*matti-*

*mattina*, this Morning; *sta sera*, or *sta notte*, this Night.

*Costui*, he, or this Man, *coſtei*, she, or this Woman, require the Article, *di*, *a*, *da*; and in the Plural, make *coſtoro*: They are uſed only for Perſons.

*Coteſti*, as has been ſaid of *queſti* and *quegli*, is ſometimes uſed for *coteſto*; as, *coteſti ancor vive*, he is ſtill living.

*Colui*, he, or that Man; *colei*, she, or that Woman, are declined like *coſtui*, and in the Plural, make *coloro*; but they are proper only to Perſons.

*Ciò*, this or that, ſerves for *queſto* and *quello*: It is declined with the Article, *di*, *a*, *da*; but it is ſaid only of Things; as, *noi parleremo di ciò à bell'agio*, we will talk of that at Leiſure; *queſto qui*, *queſta qui*, *quello là*, *quella là*, this here, that there, are declined like *queſto* and *quello*.

*Queſto* uſed without a Subſtantive, is neuter, and ſignifies this or that; as, *ſe fate queſto*, *ſarete perduto*, if you do that, you will be undone.

### Of Pronouns Relative.

#### First OBSERVATION.

The relative *che* has two Significations, of the Perſon, and of the Thing; when it ſignifies the Perſon, or any Sort of Being, it cannot  
be

be used but in the nominative and accusative Singular and Plural; and in the other Cases, we use, *cui*, with or without the Articles, *di*, *a*, *da*; as, *un uomo che canta bene*, a Man that sings well; *la donna che voi amate*, the Woman you love; *un cavallo che galoppa bene*, a Horse that gallops well; *un uomo il cui merito*, or *il di cui merito è ben conosciuto*, a Man whose Merit is well known; *a cui rispose*, to whom he answered.

When *che* is relative to a Thing, it is common to all Genders, Numbers and Cases; as, *il libro che vi ho mandato*, the Book I sent you; *i libri che sono stampati*, the Books that are printed.

#### Seventh OBSERVATION.

*Che*, with the Articles, *il*, *del*, *al*, *dal*, before it, is relative neither to a Person nor to a Thing, but to what has been said before; as, *se andasse alla guerra correrebbe rischio d'esser ammazzato*, *il che mi dispiacerebbe molto*, if he went for a Soldier, he would run a risque to be killed, for which I should be very sorry.

#### Third OBSERVATION.

*Quale*, when it is taken relatively, requires the Articles, *il*, *del*, *al*, *dal*, *la*, *della*, *alla*, *dalla*, and their Plural, and is used instead of *che*; as, *l'uomo il quale teme Iddio, non teme la morte*, the Man who fears God, is not afraid of Death.

Fourth

*Fourth* OBSERVATION.

These relative Particles, *dove*, *donde*, *vi*, *ne*, are used in the following manner.

*Dove*, and *donde*, relate to a Place; ex. *il paese dove sono nato*, the Country where I was born; *il luogo donde vengo*, the Place from whence I come.

*Vi*, relates to a Place or Thing; *sete stato alla chiesa? vi sono stato*, have you been at Church? yes, I have been there; *la morte è inevitabile, e perciò dobbiamo pensarvi*, or *pensarci*, Death is inevitable, and therefore we ought to think of it.

*Ne*, relates to a Thing or Place; ex. *quando ho del vino, ne bevo*, when I have Wine, I drink it; *è un bel cavallo, ma ne ho veduto uno più bello*, that's a fine Horse, but I have seen a finer; *voi mi avete servito, e vene ringrazio*, you have obliged me, and I thank you for it; *volete andare in città? ne vengo*, will you go into the City? I come from thence.

*Fifth* OBSERVATION.

*Che* is repeated in *Italian*, as well as other Pronouns; ex. *è un uomo che canta, che balla, e che suona di molti stromenti*, it is a Man that sings, dances, and plays upon several Instruments.

*Chi* sometimes is used distributively; as, *chi dice una cosa, chi un'altra*, some say one Thing, some another.

f of

## Of Pronouns Interrogative.

## First OBSERVATION.

Of the Interrogative Pronouns, *chi*, *che* are always absolute, but *quale* is generally conjunctive.

## Second OBSERVATION.

*Quale* is said both of Persons and Things; *chi*, of Persons; *che*, of Things and Persons. ex. *quale di queste dame vi piace più?* which of these Ladies do you like best? *quale di questi fiori volete?* which of these Flowers will you have? *Chi siete voi?* who are you? *chi ha fatto questo?* who has done this? *di che si parla?* what do they say Abroad? *che uomo è quello?* what Man is that?

## Of Numeral Pronouns.

Numeral Pronouns are, *ciascuno*, *ciascheduno*, *no*, *ognuno*, *nessuno*, *niuno*, *veruno*, *nullo*, *ogni*, *tutto*, *molti*, *poco*, *alcuno*.

*Ciascuno*, or *ciascheduno*, are affirmative Pronouns, that have no Plural; ex. *ciascheduno sa*, every Body knows; *ciascheduna di loro aveva una corona in testa*, they had every one of them a Crown upon their Heads.

*Nessuno*, *Niuno*, or *veruno*, have no Plural, and signify no Body, or any Body; ex. *nessuno è venuto*, no Body is come; *non ho veduto*  
nis-

*nissuno di loro* I saw none of them; *vi è nessuno che mi voglia?* is there any Body that wants me?

*Ogni* is affirmative, and has no Plural; ex. *ogni paese ha la sua usanza*, every Conuntry has its Custom; *in ogni cosa le femine s' appigliano al peggio*, Women betake themselves to the worst in every thing

*Ogni*, with *cosa*, doth signifie every; ex. *il tempo consuma ogni cosa*, Time destroys every thing.

*Poco* is affirmative, and declinable; ex. *pochi sono quelli che sieguono la virtù*, few are those that follow Virtue.

*Molti* is affirmative of the plural Number; ex. *molti sono chiamati, ma pochi eletti*, many are called, but few are chosen; *vi sono molte belle donne in Inghiltera*, there are many fine Women in England.

*Alcuno* is affirmative and declinable; *ho alcune cose a dirvi*, I have some things to tell you.

We use the Pronoun *alcuno* after a Verb that is preceeded by a Negative; ex. *non vi è alcuna che sia più bella di voi*, there is no body handsomer than you.

#### Of Pronouns Indefinite.

Pronouns Indefinite are, *l' uno*, *l' altro*, *qualcheduno*, *alcuno*, *chiunque*, *qualunque*, *chiche*, *qualche*, *certo*, *stesso*, *tale*, *chi*; ex. *l' uno e l' altro hanno ragione*, both, are in the right; *gli uni*

*uni sono di questa opinione, gli altri di quella*, so me are of this Opinion, others of that; *altro è parlar di morte, altro è morire*, to speak of Death is one thing, and to die another.

We say, *da altro*, to signify One's Aptness in doing something; ex. *tu non sei da altro, che da lavare le soudelle*, you are good for nothing else, but to wash Dishes.

*Obiunque* has no Plural, and is only said of Persons; ex. *obiunque teme Iddio, ama il suo prossimo*, whosoever fears God, loves his Neighbour.

*Qualunque* has no Plural, and is said only of Things; as, *farò qualunque cosa mi comandate*, I will do any thing you command me.

*Chiehe*, has no Plural, and is said only of Persons; ex. *chiehe tel'abbia detto, no'l nego*, whoever has told you of it, I do not deny it.

*Qualche*, has no Plural, and is said both of Persons and Things; ex. *qualche tu sie, od ombra od uomo certo*, whoever you are, either a Ghost, or a real Man; *datemi qualche cosa*, give me something; *ho qualche danari*, I have some Money.

*Stesso*, this Pronoun is often joined with personal Pronouns; ex. *anderò da me stesso*, I will go by my self. *io stesso vel'ho detto*, I told you that my self. It is also joined with Substantives; ex. *il Re stesso*, the King himself.

*Tale*, is declinable, and is said both of Persons and

and Things; and makes *tal* in the Plural; both for Masculine and Feminine; ex. *un tale mel' ha detto*. such a one told me that; *tal marito*, *tal moglie*, like Husband, like Wife; *non posso soffrire una tal cosa*, I cannot endure such a Thing.

*Tale* is sometimes an Adjective of Similitude, between two or more Things; but in this Sense it is a Pronoun relative; and *quale* answers to it; ex. *e d'esser tal per suo valor si vanta*, *qual tu per tua virtù la fingi ed orni*, and she presumes, that she is really deserving of those Praises, which you give her only through your Submission.

## C H A P. XII.

### *Of Verbs.*

**T**Here are three Thing to be considered in Verbs.

*First*, The Use of Moods. *Secondly*, The Use of Tenses. And, *Thirdly*, The Regimen, or Case governed.

### *Of the Use of Moods.*

I have treated before of the Nature, and consequently of the Use of the four Moods; but because of their Particles, some of which govern the Indicative, others the Conjunctive, and others again the Infinitive, it will not be improper to set them down here.

{ 3

Con-

*Conjunctions that govern the Indicative.**Subito che*, as soon as.*Dopo che*, after that.*Poiche*, } since, seeing that.*Atteso che*, }*Tanto che*, } as long as, whilst.*Mentre che*, }*Di maniera che*, } so that, inasmuch that.*Talmente che*, }*Si ben che*, }*Forse che*, perhaps.*Eccetto che*, } except that, unless, but, save*Se non che*, } that.*Perchè*, } because.*A causa che*, }*Secondo che*, according as.*Oltre che*, besides that.*Tanto che*, as long as,*Dopo che*, since.*Conjunctions that govern the Conjunctive Mood.**Affinchè*, } that.*Acciocchè*, }*Avanti che*, } before that.*Prima che*, }*A meno che*, except, unless.*Benchè*, } though, or although.*Ancorchè*, }*Caso che*, in case that.

Con

*Con patto che,* } upon condition that, pro-  
*A condizion che,* } vided that.  
*Purchè,* }

*Senza che,* without.

*Fino a tanto che,* till.

*Per tema che,* for fear, lest.

*Dato che,* } suppose, or grant that.  
*Supposto che,* }

And perhaps some few more.

A Verb that is followed by the Particle *che*, governs the Indicative or Conjunctive Mood; and because it suffices to know the Verbs that govern either of these two Moods, I shall only mention those that govern the Conjunctive, as being less in Number than the rest.

Besides the Conjunctions already mentioned, we use the conjunctive Mood,

First, After the following Verbs, *volere, desiderare, pretendere, comandare, pregare, supplicare, richiedere, comportare, permettere, difendere, proibire, persuadere, dissuadere, esortare, temere, dubitare, supporre, impedire, aspettare, dire, fare.* ex.

*Voglio che voi andiate,* I will have you go; *desidererei che venisse,* I wish he would come, &c.

Note, That these Verbs *comandare, ordinare, pregare, permettere, difendere, proibire, supplicare, impedire,* require the Infinitive of the following Verb with the Particle *di*, when they govern a Noun or Pronoun; ex. *li ho comandato di dirvi,*

f 4

I ha-

I have commanded him to tell you. But when the same are used in an indefinite Sense, and govern neither Noun nor Pronoun, they require a Conjunctive after them; ex. *il Rè ordinò, che l'esercito s'attendasse intorno alle mura*, the King gave Orders for the Army to encamp about the Walls.

*Secondly*, Most Imperpersonal Verbs require a Conjunctive after them; *bisogna che voi partite domani*, you must go away to Morrow.

*Thirdly*, We generally use the Conjunctive Mood after a Verb that has the Particle *se*, or the Negative *non* before it; *se voi credete, che sia venuto*, if you think that he is come; *non credo che sia ancora arrivato*, I believe he is not come yet.

*Note*, That when the Particle *se* goes before the Imperfect Tense of the Indicative in *English*, we use the second Imperfect of the Conjunctive, if we speak of the Time to come, it being in this Sense a Particle conditional; as, *s'io fossi ricco, avrei molti amici*, if I was rich, I should have many Friends; *se fosse liberale, sarebbe amato da tutti*, if he was liberal, he would be beloved by every Body: But if we speak of the Time past, we use the Imperfect Tense of the Indicative; ex. *Se Giorgio Primo era temuto da suoi vicini*, Giorgio Secondo è temuto e amato, if George the First was feared by his Neighbours, George the Second is feared and beloved.

*Note*

Note also, That in *English* we use the Present Tense with the Particle *if*, when we speak of the Time to come; but in *Italian* we use the Future, ex. *verrò domani se averò tempo*, I will come to Morrow, if I have Time.

Fourthly, After *quale*, without asking the Question; ex. *non sapendo qual fosse la stagione propria da seminare*, not knowing the proper Season for Sowing; *non vedo qual sia l'intento suo*, I do not see what his Design is: But if by *quale*, we ask a Question, the Verb must be of the Indicative Mood; *quale di questi fiori volete?* which of these Flowers will you have?

Fifthly, After the Superlative Definite; as, *la più bella donna che conosca*, the finest Woman I know.

Sixthly, After the relative *che*, when the Verb expresses a Condition in a future Sense; as, *voglio una moglie che sia bella e ricca*, I will have a Wife handsome and rich.

### Of the Infinitive.

The Infinitive, as we said before, has an Indefinite Signification, and expresses the Action without any Circumstance either of Time or Person. There are of Prepositions which are often joined with the Infinitive, viz. *di, a, da, per*, by means of which we express the Gerunds and Supines of the *Latins*, which are generally rendered into *English* by the Particle *to*; ex.

V.

*Vi prego di mandarmi*, I desire you to send me;  
*ho qualche cosa a scrivere*, I have something to  
 write; *queste non son cose da fare*, such Things  
 are not to be done; *vengo per farvi sapere, che*,  
 I come to let you know, that.

*Of the Use of the Particle Di before the Infinitive.*

The Preposition *di* is used before the Infinitive,  
*First*, After a Noun Substantive, in which  
 Case it answers to the Gerund in *di*, in the *La-*  
*tin*; ex. *l'Arte di parlare*, the Art of Speaking;  
*non ho il tempo di leggere*, I have not the Time  
 to read.

*Secondly*, After an Adjective that governs a  
 Genitive Case; such as, *contento, risoluto, &c.*  
 ex. *sono contento di morire*, I am contented to  
 die; *sono risoluto di partire*, I am resolved to go,

*Thirdly*, After the Verbs, *sperare, comanda-*  
*re, permettere, desiderare, pregare, promettere,*  
*impedire, persuadere, dissuadere, consigliare,*  
*avvertire, temere, &c.* ex. *spero di vedervi do-*  
*mani*, I hope to see you to Morrow; *vi prego di*  
*considerare*, I desire you to consider, &c.

*Of the Use of the Particle a before the Infinitive.*

The Preposition *a* is used before the Infinitive,

*First*, After the Verbs *avere*, and *essere*, in  
 the following and like Expressions; ex. *ho una*  
*lettera a scrivere*, I have a Letter to write; *c'è*  
*pericolo a caminâr la notte*, it is dangerous to  
 walk in the Night.

Se-

*Secondly*, After Adjectives that govern the Dative Case; such as, *pronto, dedito, accostumato, atto, &c.* ex. *sono pronto à partire*, I am ready to go; *egli è dedito a giuocare*, he is given to play, &c.

*Thirdly*, After some Verbs; such as *cominciare, consigliare, esortare, prepararsi, disporfi, apparecchiarsi, risolverfi, metterfi, occuparsi, &c.* io *comincio ad intendere l'Italiano*, I begin to understand Italian, &c.

*Note*, That if the Verb begins by a Vowel, we say, *ad*; ex. *v'esorto ad aver pazienza*, I advise you to have Patience.

*Note* also, That there are several Verbs before which we may use the Particle, *di* or *a*, almost indifferently; in which case we ought to chuse that which sounds best to the Ear; such as, *consigliare, esortare, persuadere, sforzare, mancare, provare*, and some others.

*Of the Use of the Particle da before the Infinitive.*

The Preposition *da* is used before the Infinitive, when the Infinitive Active is put instead of the Passive; ex. *la guerra è da temere*, War is to be feared; *queste non sono cose da fare*, such Things ought not to be done.

*Of the Use of the Preposition per before the Infinitive,*

The Preposition *per*, is used before the Infinitive.

*First,*

*First*, To express the End, Design, or Cause of an Action; ex. *vengo per farvi sapere*, I come to acquaint you; *è stato impiccato per aver ammazzato un uomo*, he was hanged for killing a Man.

There are six Prepositions, viz. *senza*, *dopo*, *per*, *con*, *col*, *in*, which are sometimes used before the Infinitive; ex.

*Non si può vivere senza mangiare*, one cannot live without eating; *dopo aver preso congedo da suoi amici, partì per Francia*, after having taken Leave of his Friends, he went to France; *perduto è il tempo, che in amar non si spende*, the Time that is not spent in loving, is lost; *collo studiare s'impara*, by Study one learns.

*Note*, That the Infinitive is used for the Imperative, in forbidding something; as, *non mi tacer*, *qual'è'l pastor tra noi*, &c. do not conceal from me, who is the Shepherd among us, &c.

*Note* also, That we use the Infinitive like a Substantive, with the Article, *il*, *del*, *al*, *dal*: ex. *il mangiar soverchio nuoce alla salute*, too much Eating impairs our Health; *il parlar di soverchio*, *è segno di pazzia*, much Talk is a Sign of Folly.

### *Of the Use of Tenses.*

Although what I have said already, about the Use of Tenses in the Chapter of Analogy, may in some Measure be sufficient; yet it will not be amiss to make here the following Observations.

1. The

1. The Present of the Indicative Mood is sometimes used instead of the Future; ex. *domani è festa*, to Morrow is a Holiday, &c.

2. The Imperfect is used to shew the Continuation of an Action, which was done, either some time ago, or in the Time one speaks of; as, *per questa mene venivo a Londra*, for this I was coming to London; *sedeva appresso di me*, he was sitting by me.

Sometimes it implies Frequency, Manner or Custom; as, *sì che là dove avean gli augelli il nido notaro i pesci*; so that where Birds were used to build their Nests, now Fishes swam; *il famigliare, che mal volentieri l'uccidea*, the Servant, who had no Mind to kill him.

We use the same time, when a Action meets with an Impediment; *avevo disegno d'andare in Francia, ma i miei affari non m'elo permettono*, I had a Design to go to France, but my Business does not permit me.

3. The perfect Definite expresses the precise and determinate Time, when the Action was done; ex. *poichè a morte mi sentii ferito*, after I found my self mortally wounded. It is also called the Historical Tense, because it is much used by the Historians, to relate Things past; as, *avvenne, che il Re di Francia morì, ed in suo luogo fu coronato il figliuolo*, it hapned that the King of France died, and his Son was crowned in his Stead.

4. The

4. The Preterperfect expresses an Action perfectly past, without determining any precise Time ; as, *io ho inteso ciò che di me ragionate avete*, I have overheard all that is said concerning me ; *mio Padre morì in Italia*, my Father died in Italy.

Sometimes it expresses an Action done the same Day that we speak of it ; as, *l'ho veduto stamattina*, I saw him this Morning.

5. The first Pluperfect expresses an Action that was perfectly past, before another, which is spoken of, was begun, but without determining any certain and precise Time ; as, *l'avevo ben veduto, ma non lo conoscevo*, I had seen him, but I did not know him.

6. The second Pluperfect expresses an Action perfectly past, before another which is spoken of was begun, and besides the Time is certain and determined ; as, *veduto che l'ebbi subito il conobbi*, I knew him as soon as I saw him ; *non sì tosto rustico Pastorel l'ebbe guatata, che i primi sguardi non sostenne*, no sooner had a rustick Swain glanced his Eyes upon her, but he surrendered at the first Sight.

### O the Regimen of Verbs.

There are two Things to be considered about the Regimen of Verbs, viz. their Nominative, and the Case governed.

of

## Of the Nominative of Verbs.

## First R U L E.

A Verb Personal in the Indicative or Con-junctive Mood requires before, or after it, a Nominative, either expressed or understood, that agrees with it in Number and Person; ex. *la giustizia contiene tutte le altre virtù*, Justice comprehends all other Virtues; *io non amo che voi*, I love none but you.

*Note*, That all Nouns, both singular and plural, are of the third Person, except these Pronouns Personal, *io*, *tu*, *noi*, *voi*, which are of the first and second Person; and those Nouns which are used in the same Sense as the Vocative of the *Latins*, especially when joined with the second Persons of the Imperative Mood, are of the second Person: ex. *Io leggo Virgilio*, I read *Virgil*; *noi studiamo la Filosofia*, we study *Philosophy*; *voi sete felice*, you are happy; *amico avete torto*, Friend you are in the wrong; *Signori badate a voi*, Gentlemen look to your selves.

## Second R U L E.

The first Person is counted better than the second, and the second better than the third; therefore, when two or more Persons go before a Verb, the Verb always agrees with the best Person; as, *lui ed io abbiamo pransato insieme*, he and I have dined together; *voi ed ella sarete ben venuti*, you and she shall be welcome.

*Note*

*Note* by the by, that though the first Person be better than the other two (according to Grammatical Notions) yet when we speak or write, we ought never to name our selves first, as the *Greeks* and *Latins* do; as for Example, we must not say, *io e voi*; but *voi ed io*, you and I.

### Third R U L E.

The Substantive Verb *Essere*, and some Neuter Verbs, have often a Nominative before, and another after; ex. *io sono felice*, I am happy.

### Fourth R U L E.

Two or more Substantives of the Singular Number, being joined by a Conjunction, require a Verb in the Plural. See *Chap. 11.* about the Construction of Substantives.

### Fifth R U L E.

When two or more Nominatives Singular are separated by the disjunctive Particle *o*, the Verb is generally put in the Singular, and very seldom in the Plural; as, *o l'avarizia, o la prodigalità regna ne' ricchi*, either Covetousness or Prodigality reigns among the Rich; *forse che l'amor de' figliuoli, la sua riputazione, o'l timor di Dio lo faranno divenir savio*; perhaps, either the Love of his Children, his Reputation or the Fear of God will make him wise.

*Sixth*

Sixth RULE.

Two or more Nouns singular, being joined by the Particle *ne*, are construed with a Verb, either singular or plural; as, *ne il pericolo della vita, nè il timor di Dio ebbero forza a smuoverlo dalla sua risoluzione*, neither the Danger of his Life, nor the Fear of God, could prevail to make him alter his Resolution.

Seventh RULE.

When there are several Nominatives, the last of which is in the singular Number, and separated from the rest by the Particle *ma*, the Verb ought to be in the singular Number; ex. *Non solamente i suoi onori, e le sue ricchezze, ma anche la sua riputazione svanì*, not only his Honours and Riches, but his Reputation also vanished away.

Eighth RULE.

After collective Words; such as, *una quantità, un modo, la maggior parte*, &c. the Verb agrees in Number with the Substantive that comes after the Collective; ex. *una quantità di gente morì*, a great many People died; *una quantità di soldati entrarono nella città*, a great many Soldiers entered the Town; *la maggior parte degli uomini sono cattivi*, the Generality of Men are wicked.

t

of

*Of the Case governed by Verbs.**First R U L E.*

All active Verbs govern an Accusative Case, ( which in Nouns and Participles is the same as the Nominative: ) ex. *amare la virtù*, to love Virtue; *castigare i cattivi*, to punish the Wicked.

*Second R U L E.*

Passive Verbs do generally govern the Ablative Case; ex. *essere amato da tutti*, to be beloved by every body.

*Third R U L E.*

Verbs that signify to give, or attribute, govern the Accusative of the Thing, and the Dative of the Person; as, *dar la gloria a Dio*, to give the Praise to God.

*Fourth R U L E.*

Most neuter Verbs are absolute, and govern no Case, unless it be by means of some Preposition; ex. *vivere onestamente*, to live honestly; *parlare al Re*, to speak to the King.

*Fifth R U L E.*

Most Verbs of Motion govern the Dative Case of the Thing towards which the Action tends, and the Ablative or Gentive of the Place or Person from which the Motion comes; as, *andare a Pa-*

*a Parigi*, to go to *Paris*; *venire dalla campagna*, to come from the Country; *partimmo di Livorno*, we came from *Leghorn*.

*Note*, That Verbs that signify to come, to return, to go out, &c. require the Genitive of Nouns which are declined with the Article, *di*, *a*, *da*; as, *vengo di Londra*, I come from London: but they have the Ablative of Nouns, which are declined with the Article *il*, *del*, *al*, *del*; ex. *vengo dalla città*, I come from the City, yet sometimes the Genitive is used; ex. *la Gianetta uscì della camera*, *Gianetta* went out of the Room. *Bocc.*

## C H A P. XIII.

### *Of the Construction of Participles.*

**P**articiples, as we said before, are either Active or Passive, both which are construed as follows.

#### *Construction of Active Participles.*

##### *First R U L E.*

The Participle Active has two Terminations, viz. in *ando*, as *amando*, and in *endo*, as *credendo*, *dormendo*.

t 2

Se-

## Second R U L E.

All Participles Active are indeclinable, or are of all Numbers, Genders and Persons, as long as they have the Force and Signification of the Verb, from whence they are derived; ex, *Il Re essendo affiso sul trono*, the King sitting on his Throne; *la Regina essendo indisposta*, the Queen being indisposed.

## Third R U L E.

The Nominative is better placed after the Participle Active, than before; ex *avendo il Re dato ordine*, the King having ordered.

## Construction of Participles Passive.

## First R U L E.

The Participle Passive, used in a Passive Signification, is declinable, and varies according to the Difference of Genders and Numbers; ex. *io sono amato* I am loved; *ella è stimata*, she is esteemed; *noi siamo lodati*, we are praised.

*Note*, That when the Pronoun *voi* is put for the singular *tu*, the Participle that follows it ought to be in the singular; *voi siete amato* or *amata*, you are loved.

Se-

Second R U L E.

The same Participle is also declined in Neuter Verbs; ex. *egli è venuto, andato, &c.* he is come gone, &c. *ella è venuta, andata, &c.* she is come, gone, &c.

Third R U L E.

The Participle Passive being used in the Active Signification, with the Auxiliary Verb *avere*, may be declinable or indeclinable; ex. *Io ho sperato la pace*, and *Io ho sperata la pace*, I have hoped for Peace; *ho ricevuto le vostre lettere*, and *ho ricevute le vostre lettere*, I have received your Letters.

Fourth R U L E.

When the Pronoun in the Accusative Case, such as, *che, lo, la, gli, le*, goes before the Participle, then the latter is declined, and agrees with the Pronoun, to which it relates both in Gender and Number; as, *il cappello che ho comprato*, the Hat I, or which I bought; *la lettera ch'ho scritta*, the Letter I wrote; *i libri ch'ho comprati*, the Books I bought; *l'ho veduto*, I have seen him; *l'ho veduta*, I have seen her.

According to this Rule, the Participle is declined in reciprocal and reflected Verbs; as, *egli s'è ammazzato*, he has killed himself; *ella s'è ammazzata*, she has killed her self,

The

The Participle is indeclinable, when there follows immediately a Verb in the Infinitive; as, *Il Papa ha fatto scomunicare gli eretici*, the Pope has excommunicated the Hereticks; *mia sorella ha creduto partire*, my Sister thought to go.

#### Sixth R U L E.

The Participles Active, *avendo*, and *essendo*, are sometimes suppressed before Participles Passive; ex. *il quale inteso il disegno*, instead of *avendo inteso*, who having known the Design; *ammalatosi il Re*, instead of *essendosi ammalato*, the King being taken ill.

*Note*, That although we suppress the Participles *avendo*, *essendo*, we never suppress the Pronouns Conjunctive, which follow them, but they must be placed after the Participles Passive; ex. *avendo veduto*, we say, *vedutolo*, having seen him; *essendosene accorto*, we say, *accortosene*, he perceiving it.

#### Seventh R U L E.

Instead of the Participles *avendo*, and *essendo*, we use sometimes the Perfect Definite, and the Future of the Indicative Mood, with the Particle *che* before; ex. *finito ch' ebbe di scrivere*, having done writing; *finita che fu la predica*, the Sermon being done; *cominciata che sarà la guerra*, as soon as the War is begun; *pransato che averò*, after I have dined.

#### CHAP.

## C H A P. XIV.

*Of the Use of Prepositions.*

THE Case governed by Prepositions has been abundantly spoken of in the Analogy; and therefore I shall only make here some Observations upon the Use of some Prepositions.

## First OBSERVATION.

The Preposition *verso* relates to a Place, to a Person, and to Time, generally it governs the Accusative, and sometimes the Genitive; as, *verso Roma*, towards Rome: *verso me*, or *dime*, towards me; *verso la Sera*, towards the Evening.

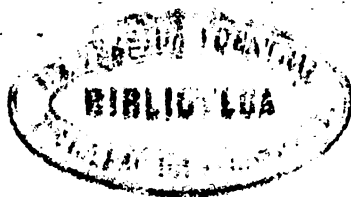
*Inverso* relates only to a Person; *inverso me*, towards me.

## Second OBSERVATION.

The Prepositions *in* and *nel*, although they signify the same Thing, yet are not indifferently used; *In* is used before Verbs of Motion or Rest; ex. *Io vo in Roma*, I go to Rome; *io sono in Londra*, I am at London. It is used also before Nouns that have no Article; ex. *è stato famoso in Pace e in guerra*, he has been famous in Peace and War; *egli è in pericolo*, he is in Danger:  
But

But if proper Names have an Article, or are followed by an Article, we use the Prepositions, *nel*, *nello*, *nella*, *ne'*, *nelle*, *negli*, according to the Gender and Number of the Substantive; as, *nel giardino*, in the Garden; *nella chiesa*, in the Church; *nello studio*, in the Study; *nell' Italia*, in Italy, &c.

When we speak of a Space of Time, we use the Preposition *in*, to express the whole Time one hath been about doing any Thing; as, *ha composto la sua Istoria in tre anni*, he composed his History in three Years. We also use *in*, to signify that the Thing in Question will not be done till after a certain Time; as, *verrà in otto giorni*, he will come in eight Days.



## CORRECTIONS.

Pag. 17. line 5. for hash, read *batb*. 19. 23. result  
*results*. 28. 13. *se aliquanti se alquanti*. 40. 26.  
 Vowel *Vowels*. 47. 14. there is *there are*. 48. 6.  
 make *makes*. 917. *figular singular*. ib. 27. ought  
*ought*. 68. 5. or or. 97 5. *questo quello*. 114. 11.  
 he had *thou had'st*. 124. 14. In amo *Io amo*. 136.  
 15. *tu aveise tu aveissi*. 138. 17. *finnest sinnetb*.  
 139. 16. he *we* 140. 7. shalt *shall*. 151. 25. give  
*gives*. 182. 27. whoever *however*. 198. 17. I  
 opened *I covered*. *ibid*. 18. open *cover*. 211. 5. or  
 or. 214. 2. Pronoun *Pronouns*. 262. 10. Highness  
*Highnesses*. 289. 6. *smuovrlo smuoverlo*.







